

Reference Manual V1.00.01



TotalFlow Simply Prepress System Overview	1
TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation	0
	Z
Job List Menu	3
Jobs	4
Imposition	5
Imposition Parts	6
Ticket Editing	7
POD Link	8
Main Window	9
MIS Link Function	10
Color Management Parameter List	11
Profile and Recipe Registration	12

Read this manual carefully and keep it handy for future reference.

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE USING THE SOFTWARE

WARNING

Do not look at the computer monitor for a long time. If you have looked at the monitor for an extended period of time, and experience discomfort in your eyes, shoulders, neck, arms, or any other parts of your body, stop use of the computer immediately, and rest until the feeling of discomfort goes away. Moreover, if the feeling of discomfort continues, consult a doctor immediately.

NOTE

- 1 Before using this software, carefully read and understand the Reference Manual provided.
- 2 No part of this software may be copied or altered without consent from Ricoh Company, Ltd..
- 3 Discrepancies between the manual and product may arise if improvements are made to the product after its delivery. The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- 4 This manual was created with the utmost care. However, please contact us if any unclear sections, errors, or omissions are found.
- 5 Please be aware that we are not responsible for any damage or profit loss incurred as a result of this software's operation or errors or omissions in this manual.
- 6 We are not responsible for any damage caused by conditions beyond our control such as modification or disassembly, abuse, and defective environment on the part of customers concerning our product, program, or software.
- 7 Information on other conditions for using this software can be found in the End User Software License Agreement. Please read it thoroughly before operating this software.

TRADEMARKS

- Copyright c 2016 SCREEN Graphic and Precision Solutions Co., Ltd. All rights reserved. Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Server are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Internet Explorer is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Adobe, the Adobe logo, the Adobe PDF logo, Adobe Illustrator, Adobe Photoshop, and PageMaker are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Acrobat and the Adobe Acrobat logo are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Apple and Macintosh are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- GHL is a trademark of Precision Modeling Laboratory, Inc.
- Silicon Graphics, Inc. and Sam Leffler Libtiff
 © 1988-1996 Sam Leffler
 - © 1991-1996 Silicon Graphics, Inc.
- Pitstop is a registered trademark of Artwork Systems N.V.
 JpegLib is copyright © 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane, All rights reserved
 MD5 Lib is copyright © 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.
 LibTiff is copyright © 1988-1997 Sam Leffler, 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.
 Tib is conversite © 1005, 2002, Lang Jawa Catily, and Mark Adles Partices of this product Catily.
 - Zlib is copyright © 1995-2002 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler Portions of this product Copyrights 2003 Glyph & Cog, LLC.

Mminstance-1.20 is copyrighted.

Copyright © 2001-2016 The International Cooperation for the Integration of Processes in Prepress, Press and Postpress (CIP4). All rights reserved.

This product includes software developed by the The International Cooperation for the Integration of Processes in Prepress, Press and Postpress (www.cip4.org)"

- Other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.
- This product is licensed under the following patent.

U.S. Patent No. 5,481,379

About this Manual

This Reference Manual includes the following chapters

Chapter 1 TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

This chapter describes an overview and the system configuration of TotalFlow Simply Prepress, and also how to install the client.

Chapter 2 TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

This chapter describes the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client workflow and how to use various functions including the startup, job, and imposition scheme settings.

Chapter 3 Job List Menu

This chapter describes the Job List window that is displayed by clicking the JobList button in the shortcut area, and the series of operations used to create a job.

Chapter 4 Jobs

This chapter describes how to create jobs and specify various settings, as well as relevant operation procedures.

Chapter 5 Imposition

This chapter describes how to create and edit an imposition scheme.

Chapter 6 Imposition Parts

This chapter describes how to use the various editors provided for creating imposition data on TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

Chapter 7 Ticket Editing

This chapter describes how to create and edit tickets on TotalFlow Simply Prepress, as well as operation procedures in each setting window.

Chapter 8 POD Link

This chapter describes the settings required when performing POD output with TotalFlow Simply Prepress, as well as operation procedures in each setting window.

Chapter 9 Main Window

This chapter describes how to operate the progress window and recorder progress window on TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

Chapter 10 MIS Link Function

This chapter describes the connection between TotalFlow Simply Prepress and an MIS.

Chapter 11 Color Management Parameter List

This chapter describes the settings in the Color management window.

Chapter 12 Profile and Recipe Registration

This chapter describes how to register a new ICC profile, device link profile, or recipe file to the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.

Notation

The following icons are used throughout this manual.

Important Indicates warnings about equipment damage and time loss that may result from incorrect operation.



Indicates supplementary information and tips that are not included in the body of the manual.

Indicates where to look for related information or shared procedures.



Reference

Indicates operational procedures. The actual procedures for operating the system appear in bold and the results of the procedures are in plain text.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TRADEMARKS	ii
About this Manual	iii
Notation	.iv

1. TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

TotalFlow Simply Prepress	1
System features	1
System configuration	3

2. TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

TotalFlow Simply Prepress operation workflow	4
Installing a TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client	5
Starting up TotalFlow Simply Prepress How to start up TotalFlow Simply Prepress	6 6
Exiting TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client How to exit TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client using the screen title bar How to exit TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client using the menu	8 8 8
Layout of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress window Main window layout	8
Menu bar	9
Shortcut area	11

3. Job List Menu

Job List	12
Toolbar	12
List	14
Group	16
Job Template	18
HotFolder	19
Job Simple Confirmation	20
Smart Folder	21
User-defined items	23
Basic job operations	25
Creating a new job	25
Creating a job using a template	25
Opening a job	25
Changing the job settings	25

Saving a job as a template	25
Changing a job name	25
Copying a job	25
Deleting a job	
Optimizing a job	
Creating a job backup	
Restoring a job	27
Basic job template operations	
Creating a new job template	
Editing job template	
Changing a job template name	
Copying a job template	
Deleting a job template	
Creating a job template backup	
Restoring a job template	

4. Jobs

Job Details window	
Job Details window layout	
Menu bar	32
Toolbar	34
Main area	34
Detailed display area	35
History display area	
Action Plan	40
Registered File Management	41
Activity Board	42
Layout Management	43
Job setting procedure	47
Action Plan Window Layout	47
Property	
Input Color Setting	54
Section	64
Output Workflow	68
Managing the output settings	73
Output setting window	74
Operation using a job	79
Registering files	79
Input processing	
Assigning pages	
Setting blank pages	85
Moving the assigned pages	85
Adjusting page offsets	86

Size Adjustment	87
Setting folio marks	88
Proofrequing OK'd	80
Output processing	89

5. Imposition

Managing imposition schemes	92
Creating a new imposition scheme	93
Editing an imposition scheme	93
Copying an imposition scheme	93
Changing the name of an imposition scheme	94
Creating and Editing a imposition scheme	94
Operation procedure	94
Imposition scheme wizard	95
New Auto Ganging wizard	96
Basic settings	97
Print setting	
Division Setting window	
Layout settings	
Auto Ganging layout window	
Accessory settings	
Imposition Editor	
Free page sequence	

6. Imposition Parts

Accessory Preset Editor	. 138
Accessory Preset Editor window layout	. 138
Starting up Accessory Preset Editor	. 142
Creating a new accessory preset	. 143
Editing an accessory preset	. 143
Creating an accessory preset	. 143
Fold Catalog Editor	. 144
About Fold Catalog Editor	. 144
Fold catalog type	. 144
Starting up Fold Catalog Editor	. 145
Creating a new fold catalog	. 145
Editing a fold catalog	. 145
Operating a Fold Catalog Editor	. 146
Creating a fold catalog	. 149
Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor	. 150
Functions of Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor	. 150
Layout of the Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor window	. 150
Main window	. 150

Layout of the main window	
Basic operations	
Creating simple accessories	
Macro characters for simple accessories	
Spine Mark Editor	
Functions of Spine Mark Editor	
Layout of the Spine Mark Editor windows	
Main window	
Layout of the main window	
Editor button	
Menu bar	
Work window	
Simulation window	
Layout of the Simulation window	
Basic operations	
Information Editor	
Functions of Information Editor	
Main window	
Layout of the main window	
Basic operations	
Imposition Configuration	
Layout of the Imposition Configuration window	
Basic operations	

7. Ticket Editing

Managing tickets	218
Action Plan settings and tickets	219
nput 🚀	220
Basic Setting	220
Select Plate dialog box	221
Spot Color Filter	221
Original Color Name	222
Overprint	222
Action	223
PitStop	224
Error Check	229
PDF Output	229
Other	231
Auto-trap 📅	232
Basic Setting	232
Varnish separations (about the Transparent option in Rules for Spot Colors)	234
Object Rules	234

Rules for objects that overlap images	
Details	
Determinate Trapping	
Indeterminate Trapping	
Trap Thresholds	
Trap Reduction	
Options	
Kickback and Spot Color Rule Priorities	
The differences between Round, Beveled and Mitered trap shapes are illustrated below	241
Speed and Quality	
Trap refer to overlaps of upper objects	
Maximum blend and overprint blend for images and color objects	
Image trap resolution rules	
About locating trap objects	
Output Folder Name Macros	
Output File Name Macros	
OutlinePDF-Advance 🔬	
Basic Setting	
Finish	
Color Management	
Output options	
Option	

8. POD Link

9. Main Window

Display of the progress menu	72
Toolbar	72
Processing/Processed	73
Task	74
Event	74
Layout	75
Log	77
Log	78

	Log Total	279
	Event	280
	Operation Log	281
		201
Sy	stem window	282
	Licensing Information	282
	Host Status	283

10. MIS Link Function

Displaying a message list and updating a job	. 284
Status notification to the MIS	. 286
Automatic accessory preset setting	. 287
JDF Connect Setting Tool	. 288
Starting and exiting the JDF Connect Setting Tool	. 288
Layout and basic operations in the dialog box	. 288

11. Color Management Parameter List

Color management parameters	291
Options for ICC color conversion	291
Input color space	291
Recipe Conversion	295
Relationship between the Colorgenius peripheral devices and recipe files	297
Default recipe files	298
Image conversion settings	300
Device link profiles	301
12. Profile and Recipe Registration	

How to register profiles and recipes

1. TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

This chapter describes an overview and the features and configuration of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.

TotalFlow Simply Prepress

TotalFlow Simply Prepress is a universal workflow system that offers total control of CTP and POD (Print On Demand). A range of different devices can be operated from the TotalFlow Simply Prepress interface, supporting the use of diverse applications.

TotalFlow Simply Prepress is also equipped with features to improve productivity for plate output and printing, including Adobe PDF Print Engine, color management linked to media, easy-to-use and highly flexible imposition, and scheduled automatic job execution.

System features

TotalFlow Simply Prepress offers the following features.

Managing a large scale job by dividing it into sections

You can manage a job by dividing it into multiple parts called sections.

You can set multiple different imposition schemes for each section and apply different output processing for each imposition scheme.

It is possible to centrally manage a large scale job that is comprised of several parts including a cover, body text, advertising, and jacket band, and that uses different imposition schemes.

Promotion of automation

TotalFlow Simply Prepress offers various functions for automation such as to switch the input ticket depending on the input file conditions, to perform automatic fitting of the input data depending on the page size of the section, to create a job based on the original file name, and to automatically register the file. These functions reduce the number of operator's operations and thus prevent operation errors and the occurrence of mistakes.

Supporting easy operation

The user interface is designed with an emphasis on operability and includes simple window layouts, button arrangements that help you easily understand procedures, and show and hide selection for complicated settings. Not only simple jobs but also jobs that require complicated settings can be processed with easy operations.

Various easy imposition scheme functions

An imposition pattern is created automatically by making easy settings in accordance with the instructions in the operation screen. You can create not only a basic imposition pattern but also a complex imposition using the intuitive user interface and easy operations. As you can create an imposition and select a template in accordance with the printing settings, highly accurate operations are available.

TotalFlow Simply Prepress also offers the functions, such as customizing a signature pattern (fold catalog) and laying out a different signature created in the same job on another sheet, to support a wide variety of impositions.

• Automatic imposition creation functions

TotalFlow Simply Prepress has automatic functions to minimize imposition operations, such as a function to automatically adjust the imposition depending on the number and size of the pages, and an auto ganging function to automatically calculate the layout using the finished size and number of copies. With these functions, the imposition operation can be performed more efficiently without specific skills even though it previously required advanced knowledge.

• User management and operation log for security

TotalFlow Simply Prepress has user management and operation log functions to ensure system security. It is possible to limit the accessible functions by user or user group and, while, to keep an operation log that records who performed what operation.

• JDF linking

It is possible to retrieve imposition scheme setting information via a JDF file from the MIS system and to automatically apply the information to an imposition scheme included in the job. TotalFlow Simply Prepress operators can create an imposition scheme simply by checking the settings or adding required information.

System configuration

TotalFlow Simply Prepress is composed of three software components: the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client software, which provides the GUI for operation, TotalFlow Simply Prepress Server, which mainly manages the job and imposition and performs automatic processing, and device drives, which controls the execution of processing and devices.

As the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client software and the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Server software are run on different PCs, more than one operator can use TotalFlow Simply Prepress from the PCs on which TotalFlow Simply Prepress Server is not running.

TotalFlow Simply Prepress supports TotalFlow Print Server R61/R61A and is equipped with Native connection mode which takes best advantage of the image quality performance of PDF RIP Enhanced by SCREEN Type S.



TotalFlow Print Server R61/61A can be connected to the following production printers. RICOH Pro C9100 RICOH Pro C9110 RICOH Pro C7100S RICOH Pro C7110S RICOH Pro C7110

2. TotalFlow Simply Prepress Operation

This chapter describes how to use TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

TotalFlow Simply Prepress operation workflow

The workflow from creating to outputting a job in TotalFlow Simply Prepress is shown below.

1. Job template creation

You can create and save a job template that is used as a job setting base. A job template can contain all job information other than input data including auto process settings, color conversion settings, and imposition scheme settings. Once a job template is assigned to a hot folder, job creation and file registration are automatically performed simply by copying a file to the hot folder.

↓

2. Job creation

If you copy a file to a hot folder to which a job template has been assigned, a job is automatically created and files are automatically registered to the job. A new job is created using the job template settings. You can also create a job manually by selecting a job template. During manual job creation, you can edit the settings.

↓

3. Registering files

Register files to the job. You can register the files by dragging the files to the Job Detail window or by using the Register File button. When automatic page assignment is set, you can specify the page range to be assigned using the Register File window.

4. Assigning pages

Assign the pages included in the file registered to the job to the pages in the imposition scheme. Perform page assignment in the page list of the Job Details window and in the layout management view. You can also change the settings for blank pages and offset values. Note that this operation is not necessary when the Auto Page Assignment settings are enabled.

↓

5. Outputting

You can output a plate for which page assignment is completed. Using the Output Process Ticket window, select a ticket and a plate to be output, and issue the ticket. Note that when auto process settings are enabled, this processing is executed automatically after page assignment or approval.

Installing a TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client

Follow the steps below to install a TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.



Launch your Web browser.

2. Access the following URL.

http://{TotalFlow Simply Prepress server host name}:50067/client/en/index .htm The window to download the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client is displayed.

- **3.** Click the download link that matches the operating system version of the computer on which the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client is to be installed.
- **4.** Follow the download instructions for Windows or Macintosh and download the program to your desktop.
- 5. Double-click the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client installation program ("clientupdater.exe" for Windows, "TotalFlow Client.zip" for Macintosh) to launch it. Then, install the program according to the instructions displayed on the screen.

Starting up TotalFlow Simply Prepress

This section describes how to start up TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

How to sta	rt up TotalFle	ow Simply Prepress
Operation	1. Double-cli The server s	:k the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client icon. election window is displayed.
	00	Select Server
	Client Ver	sion:
	Server:	
		Connect Cancel
	2. Select the	Server IP address in Server and click the Connect button.
	The login w	indow is displayed.
	$\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$	Login
	Server:	/ RICOH TotalFlow Simply Prepress 4.51 TF100
	User Name	GeneralUser
	Password:	
		Login Cancel Option >>>
	Note	You can change the language and units (mm, inch) used on the client in the area that is displayed by clicking the Option button.
		Server: / RICOH TotalFlow Simply Prepress 4.51 TF100
		User Name: GeneralUser
		Password: ••••••
		Client Setting
		Language: English 🗧 🧭
		Units: According to system configuration.
		Login Cancel Option <<<

3. Enter a user name and a password in User Name and Password, select an option for Language as necessary, and then click the Login button.

User authentication is performed using the user name and the password you entered and the main window is displayed.

00			RICOH TotalFlow	Simply Prepress Cli	ent : GeneralUser@				_	
😤 🖉 🔞	2	\$								
JobList Progress Log	Sy	rstem								
44641/2448	613	🖻 🚳 🖭 🗸 🤋	(二) 🐚 🖳 🛤	: & 4 5	1 cf 45 45 <u>iii</u>	1 🕐				100
Smart Folder List Group	Job Ten	nplate								
Smart Folder(System)	× ·	Job Name 🔺	Priority	Job Status	Status	Progress	Information	tal File Number(Page Numb	Size	(11)
Edit		Job_01	Normal	* T H +	Input Proc	12%		0(0)	0.00 MB	
▼ lob		Job_02 Job_03	Normal	* T E =		• 12/0		0(0)	0.20 MB	
(すべて)	• 6	Job_04	Normal	H 😨 🖽 💼	🕘 💥 🔵 Output Pr		**	1(16)	2.61 MB	
▼ Job Template 図 ジョプテンプレート(すべて)										
Smart Folder(Local)	, T				· ·).4	Þ
▼ Job					Completed					
▼ Job Template		Job Name	Priority A	Job Status	Status	Progress	Information	tal File Number(Page Numb	Size	(10
🔯 ジョブテンプレート(すべて)	ő	test_pod	Normal	199 T 🖽 🖆	🕒 🗙 🔵 Output C			1(16)	1.74 MB	
		*******	******)•	•

Exiting TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client

There are two ways to exit TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client, from the screen title bar and from the menu. The steps are described below.

How to exit TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client using the screen title bar



 Click the x button in the screen title bar. TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client exits.

How to exit TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client using the menu

Operation
1. Select the Exit command from the File menu.
TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client exits.

Layout of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress window

This section describes the parts and names of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress main window.

Main window layout

The main window is comprised of the menu bar, shortcut area, and main area.



Menu bar	Shows the menus. For more information, see "Menus bar".
Shortcut area	Shows the icon buttons for changing the function of the main window.
Main area	Shows the window for operating the function selected in the shortcut area.

Menu bar

The menu items displayed in the main window change according to the selected button in the shortcut area.

File	
New/Job	Creates a new job.
New/Job Template	Creates a new job template.
Open Job	Displays the detailed job information window.
Save as Template	Allows you to save the job as a template.
Lock Release	Releases the lock the selected job.
Backup	Creates a backup of the selected job.
Restore	Restores the selected job.
Properties	Displays the job properties.
Properties (basic settings)	Displays the job properties edit window.
Exit	Exits TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.

Important When unlocking is specified, all the process jobs being processed are canceled. Also, if unlocking is specified while a job is being edited, the editing is disabled.

Edit	
Сору	Copies the job and the job template.
Delete	Deletes the job and the job template.
Rename	Allows you to change the job name and the job template name.
Optimize	Optimizes the selected job.
Force Completed	Changes the job status to Completed.
Action	
Register File	Displays the hot folder window.
Enable HotFolder	Starts (Enables) the hot folder of the selected job template.
Disable HotFolder	Stops (Disables) the hot folder of the selected job template.
Output	Runs preset output processing on the selected job.
Cancel	Cancels all processing being executed on the selected job.
Approve/Approve	Approves all files, pages, or signatures (surface) that are waiting approval for the selected job.
Approve/Reject	Rejects all files, pages, or signatures (surface) that are waiting approval for the selected job.

Export result record	Exports the result record for the printer of the selected job in CSV format. • File: Set the output destingtion of the CSV file to be output
	 Output item names: Select this check box to output the item names to the beginning of the CSV.
View	
Job/Smart Folder View	Displays the jobs/job templates that are filtered in accordance with the smart folder.
Job/List View	Displays the job list.
Job/Group View	Displays the jobs divided into groups.
Job/Job Template View	Displays the job template list.
Job Simple Confirmation	Displays the brief progress window.
Open All	Opens all the groups when the Group tab is selected.
Close All	Closes all the groups when the Group tab is selected.
Set Group Key	Allows you to specify the classification method for the Group tab view.
Search	Display the search dialog box.
Window	
System Ticket Management/Input	Displays the input ticket management window.
System Ticket Management/Output	Displays the output ticket management window.
Output Setting Manager	Opens the Output Setting Manager window. Allows you to import the output settings managed here to the job/job template action plan (including page proof) for use.
Imposition Manager	Displays the Imposition Manager window.
Fold Catalog Manager	Displays the Fold Catalog Manager window.
Accessory Manager window	Opens the Accessory Manager window.
Accessory Preset Manager window	Opens the Accessory Preset Manager window.
Imposition Configuration	Displays the Imposition Configuration window.
Client Settings	Displays the settings window of the client.
Help	
Manual/TopPage	Shows the online manual.
Manual/Job Template	Shows the online manual.
Manual/Job	Shows the online manual.
Maintenance/Output Lock Information	Saves the lock information to the server.

Maintenance/Output client log file	Displays the log file saving dialog box of the client.
Maintenance/Open work folder	Displays the work folder used by the client.
About	Displays the version information for the client and the server as well as the connected host name.

Shortcut area

Shows the function buttons in the sho	rtcut area at the top of	each window.
Click a button for an individual menu	to select it. The setting	window tor that tunction is displayed in the main area.
JobList Progress Log System		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
JobList	Shows a window to l the origin for operati Prepress operations.	ist and manage the jobs and job templates. This window is ng jobs and also the main window for the TotalFlow Simply
Progress	Allows you to check You can perform ope cancellation of the Pr	the progress of the ticket (ProcessJob) issued from a job. rations including change of processing order and ocessJob.
Log	Allows you to check	histories of processing, operation logs, and error logs.
System	Allows you to check license.	the system status information including the disk size and
Indicator	The indicator icon fla display the Event List	shes if an error or query occurs. Click the indicator icon to window.
		Flashes when an error has occurred in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system. (Example: low disk capacity error, TotalFlow Simply Prepress service startup error, etc.) The indicator turns off automatically when the cause of the error is eliminated.
		Flashes when an error has occurred during processing. (Example: input processing error, etc.) The indicator turns off when you click the Confirm button in the Event List Window. To turn off the indicator for a specific client, select This client only and then click the Confirm button. To turn off the indicators for all clients, select All clients and then click the Confirm button.
		Appears when an inquiry error or operation request error occurs. Clicking the icon displays the Event List window. This indicator does not turn off unless you respond to an inquiry even if you close the window. When the inquiry is handled from a different client, the indicator automatically turns off.

3. Job List Menu

This section describes job operations, from creating a new job through output.

Job List

The Job List shows a window to list and manage the jobs and job templates. This window is the origin for operating jobs and also the main window for the TotalFlow Simply Prepress operations.

• • •				RIC	OH Tota	IFlow Simply Prepress Client :	GeneralUser@	A DECEMBER OF THE OWNER OWNER OF THE OWNER OWNE OWNER OWNER OWNER OWNE OWNER OWNER OWNER OWNER OWNE					
JobList	Progress	Log	System										
	1//4	58	16 🍣 🔞	⊮ ∨ ×	1 b 17	[≡ 4 4 \$ e	1 46 46 HL *	n I @ ——					Toolbar
Smart Folder	List	Group	Job Template										
	Job Na	ime 🔺	Prie	ority Job S	Status	Status	Progress	Information	e Number(Page	Customer	Due Date	Cre 🛱	
Job_01			Norm	al 🏵 🔻		lenut Processing	1 129/		0(0)			Genera	
6 Job_02			Norm		101 mile	input Processing	J 12%		1(16)+			Genera	
Job 04			Norm	al 🛞 🕇	E :	Output Processing		- -	1(16)			Genera	
test_02	2		Norm	al 🛞 🐨	田由	O×0	Available only fo		0(0)			Genera	
												10000	
													List of jobs in progres
													Lisi oi lobs ili piogres
												_	
												_	
()						14.4	
*						Completed						- Andread	
	lob N	lame	Pri	iority lob	Status	Status	Progress	Information	e Number(Page	Customer	Due Date	Crett	
de test po	d		Norm	nal 🛞 🐨	H =	Output Completed		12	1(16)			Gener	
												_	
													List of tinished jobs
													1
												_	
		_			_								
	Active 5/6	Complet	red-1/6		-							24141	
		pres										112	

Toolbar

If you select the JobList button from the shortcut area, icon buttons for working with jobs and job templates are displayed in the toolbar.

Q	Creates a new job.
ū.	Creates a new job template.
	Shows the detailed job information.
90	Allows you to save the job as a template.
1	Shows the job properties.
Ł	Displays the job properties (basic settings) edit window.
4	Copies the job and the job template.
<u>e</u> .	Allows you to change the job name and the job template name.
G	Changes the job status to Completed.
9	Deletes the job and the job template.

2	Creates a backup of the selected job.
~ ~	Restores the backup job.
	Optimizes the selected job.
¥	Approves all files, pages, or signatures (surface) that are waiting approval for the selected job.
×	Rejects all files, pages, or signatures (surface) that are waiting approval for the selected job.
	Runs preset output processing on the selected job.
Ę	Cancels all processing being executed on the selected job.
	Displays the Job Simple Confirmation window.
4	Shows a list of events for the selected job.
&	Sets the event check status for the selected job to checked.
9	Deletes the job and the job template.
(Displays the hot folder window.
1	Starts (Enables) the hot folder of the selected job template.
1	Stops (Disables) the hot folder of the selected job template.
7	Shows a list of messages sent from the MIS when a job is created using a JDF file from the MIS.
0	Shows the online manual.
Export result record	Exports the result record.
Q	Filters the displayed list. Image: Constraint of the string in the entry field, and then click
A.	The Find dialog box is displayed. Find: Case Sensitive Wrap Search Search Backward Find(F) Close
Note The fo	ollowing functions can be applied to the jobs whose status has been changed to Completed

• Job Automatic Deletion (When Initial Date For Reckoning has been set to Completed Date.

Job List

Important
• Approval and Reject will be applied to all files, pages, or signatures (plates) that are
waiting for approval. It cannot be applied to a specific target.

The following functions cannot be used when multiple sections are set in a job. Perform the functions from the Job Details window.
 Y: Approval, X: Reject, S: Output command

List

The List tab shows the job overview list including the job names, processing status, and various settings. Click the List tab to show the job list in the main area. The tab is divided into the area that shows the list of jobs in progress (in progress job list area) and the area that shows the list of processed jobs (finished job list area). The jobs for which all output processing have been finished are shown in the finished job list area.

00				RICOH Tot	alFlow Simply Prepress Client :	GeneralUser@						
		System										
A B N	/ 云东臣	16 🏷 🏀	I IV I V	< X 🐚 🗉		1 46 46 I HI I I	11 7			•		
nart Folder	ist Group	Job Template										
	Job Name +		Priority	Job Status	Status	Progress	Information	e Number(Page	Customer	Due Date	Cre	
Job_01		No	rmal	* T 🗄 😑	() × ()			0(0)			Genera	1
Job_02		No	rmal	(i) 🗮 🖽 💼	Input Processing	3 12%		1(16)+			Genera	
Job_03		No	rmal	(1) 〒日白	OXO			0(0)			Genera	
5 JOD_04		No	rmai		Output Processing	Available only fo		1(16)			Conor	
1631_02		NO	TTTT	~ + LLI =	UNU	Available only to		0(0)			Genera	
											-	In progress job list a
					Completed							
	Job Name		Priority	Job Status	Status	Progress	Information	e Number(Page	Customer	Due Date	Cre	
de test nod	Job Hume	No	ormal	(h) T H #	Output Completed	riogicss	1	1(16)	customer	Duc Duic	Gener	1
test_pou			/////		On Completed			1(10)			Gener	
											-	Finished iob list area
												1

Color Label	Shows the color label.
Event	Shows an icon when a new error or warning occurs in a job. If you select a job and click 🚓, the Event List window is displayed. The icon disappears if you close the Event List window or click 🟘.
Job Name	Shows the job name.
Job ID	Shows the job ID.
Priority	Shows the priority of the job.
Information	 Shows information using corresponding icons. Indicates that Automatic Deletion is set for a job. Shows the optimization status. Indicates that the job was created using a JDF file (e.g., MIS). Indicates that a command was issued from an MIS or other system. Indicates that Use Target ICC is turned on. Indicates that the Use Target ICC is turned off.

Status	Shows the status of the processing being executed. The processing displayed is input processing and output processing. If more than one processing is being executed, the statuses are displayed in the reverse order of the executed order. In other words, the processing statuses are displayed in the order of output processing and then input processing. If no processing is being executed, the processing that completed most recently is displayed. When there is more than one signature/page waiting for approval in the job, is displayed. When there is more than one signature/page that was rejected in the job, 💥 is displayed.
Job Progress	Shows the progress of the job. The progress is indicated using five types of icons. A gray icon means that the job has not yet been processed, a green icon means that the job is being processed (partially completed), and a purple icon means that the job processing has been completed. 35 35 : Indicates the setting status of the job. A gray icon means that no section has been set. A green icon means that the output processing has not been set for any section. A purple icon means that the output processing has been set for all sections. 37 37 : Indicates the page assignment status. 38 37 : Indicates the final output status.
Progress	Shows the icon and progress of processing that is being executed only when the number of sections in the job is one.
Author	Shows the name of the user who created the job.
Customer	Shows the customer name of the job.
Due Date	Shows the due date of the job.
Created Date	Shows the date and time when the job was created.
Finished Date	Shows the date and time when the processing was completed.
Job Root	Shows the job root name created for the job.
Job Template	Shows the job template name.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.
Last Output Date	Shows the date and time the job was completed.
Total File Number (Total Page Number)	Shows the number of files and the total number of pages registered to the job.
Input File Size	Shows the disk size that can be reduced by clicking the ど button.
Keyword 1	Shows the information entered into Keyword 1 in the basic settings for the job.
Keyword2	Shows the information entered into Keyword2 in the basic settings for the job.

Group

The Group tab shows the jobs by classifying them into groups. The same information as in the List tab is displayed in this tab. Click the Group tab to display job information by group.

				RICOH T	otalFlow Simply Prepr	ess Client : GeneralU	ser@			
Ż		A.	8							
JobList	Progress	Log	System							
📮 🗛 🐘 🤋	10 🖋 d	有效医疗	6 🔊 ổ 🖭	v x 🐚	咦 = 办4	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	6 W M 🕐			🗾 🔜 l 🕭
Smart Folder	List	Group J	ob Template							
Group and Job	Name	Prior	ity Job Status	Status	Progress	Information e N	umber(Page Custome	r Due Date	Creator	Created Date Completed D
 [No Group] [No Group] 	up]									
	Active:4/	5 Completed	-2/6) + +
	= Active.4/1	s completeu.	210							

Color Label	Shows the color label.
Event	Shows an icon when a new error or warning occurs in a job. If you select a job and click 🚓, the Event List window is displayed. The icon disappears if you close the Event List window or click 💠.
Group and Job Name	Shows the job names classified by group.
Job ID	Shows the MIS managing order code for the job created using a JDF file from an MIS, and the job ID for other jobs.
Priority	Shows the priority of the job.
Information	 Shows information using corresponding icons. Indicates that Automatic Deletion is set for a job. Shows the optimization status. Indicates that the job was created using a JDF file (e.g., MIS). Indicates that a command was issued from an MIS or other system. Indicates that Use Target ICC is turned on. Indicates that the Use Target ICC is turned off.
Status	Shows the status of the processing being executed. The processing displayed is input processing and output processing. If more than one processing is being executed, the statuses are displayed in the reverse order of the executed order. In other words, the processing statuses are displayed in the order of output processing and then input processing. If no processing is being executed, the processing that completed most recently is displayed. When there is more than one signature/page waiting for approval in the job, is displayed. When there is more than one signature/page that was rejected in the job, is displayed.

Job Status	Shows the progress of the job. The progress is indicated using five types of icons. A gray icon means that the job has not yet been processed, a green icon means that the job is being processed (partially completed), and a purple icon means that the job processing has been completed. 350 350 : Indicates the setting status of the job. A gray icon means that no section has been set. A green icon means that the output processing has not been set for any section. A purple icon means that the output processing has been set for all sections. 37 37 : Indicates the page assignment status. 38 37 : Indicates the final output status.
Size	Shows the job size.
Total File Number (Total Page Number)	Shows the number of files and the total number of pages registered to the job.
Input File Size	Shows the disk size that can be reduced by clicking the 豦 button.
Progress	Shows the icon and progress of processing that is being executed only when the number of sections in the job is one.
Author	Shows the name of the user who created the job.
Customer	Shows the customer name of the job.
Due Date	Shows the due date of the job.
Created Date	Shows the date and time when the job was created.
Finished Date	Shows the date and time when the processing was completed.
Job Root	Shows the job root name created for the job.
Job Template	Shows the job template name.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.
Last Output Date	Shows the date and time the job was completed.

Job Template

Shows information about the job template.

Click the Job Template tab to show the job template list in the main area.

00					RICOH To	talFlow Simply	Prepress Client : GeneralUse	r@				
(ablist	Brogras		Sur	Ś								
	nogres.	/ =_ @	m. 1 M	- 🦽 I 🔤 I								-
	44 1 1			2 10 1	V # 148 -	☆ ≔ 64	WINIC NO.					31070
Smart Folder	List	Group	Job Tem	Delevite	Customer	Canadaa	Constant Data	Commente	Keywood 1	Key sug ad 2		
JobTemplate	Name -	O Hold	10rmati	Normal	Customer	GeneralUser	Apr 22, 2016 3:59:44 PM	Comments	Reyword1	Reyword2		
MIS		O Hold		Normal		GeneralUser	Apr 22, 2016 3:46:35 PM					
original		Hold		Normal								
	-											_

Job Template Name	Shows the job template name.
HotFolder	Shows the ON/OFF status of the hot folders.
Information	Shows the hot folder status. Shows the hot folder status. Indicates that Automatic Deletion is set for a job. Indicates that Use Target ICC is turned on. Indicates that the Use Target ICC is turned off.
Priority	Shows the priority of the job template.
Author	Shows the name of the user who created the job template.
Customer	Shows the customer name.
Created Date	Shows the date and time when the job template was created.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.
Keyword 1	Shows the information entered into Keyword1 in the basic settings for the job.
Keyword2	Shows the information entered into Keyword2 in the basic settings for the job.

Note

- When you click , displayed at the right end of the headings, the headings in the list are displayed and you can show or hide each column. By placing or removing a check mark, you can show or hide the column for the related heading in each area. You can also move the position of the column by dragging the related heading.
- When you click any heading in the list, the display order changes based on the heading that is clicked. Each time you click the heading, the display order changes between ascending and descending order.

HotFolder

Allows you to perform job creation and file registration at the same time using a job template in the Job List window (template list window).



 Select a job template from the job list (template list), and then click The main area switches to HotFolder.

0.0.0					-			
		RICOH T	otalFlow Simply Prepress Clier	t : GeneralUser@				
(A) E	= 📣	× 1						
\leq		2						
JobList Pro	ogress Log	System						
B B B W	▶ 孟布恩	6124121	✓ × ⓑ 県 ≔ å	4181856	110 (•	
Smart Folder	List Group	Job Template						
Job Template Nam	e HotFolder	formatic Priority	Customer Creator	Created Date	Comments	Keyword1	Keyword2	13
JobTemplate	Active	Normal Normal	GeneralUser	Apr 22, 2016 3:59:44 PM				
MIS	O Hold	Normal	GeneralUser	Apr 22, 2016 3:46:35 PM				
originai	Hold	Normal						
		HotFolder				<		
		Job Translate Name	lahTamalata 🔼		(File Celect			
		Job Template Name.	Jobrempiate		File Select			
		Register all files	s in a single job.	Delete	(Register)			

Job Template Name	Allows you to select a job template to be used.
File Select	Displays the Add window. Select a file from the Add window.
Delete	Deletes the files displayed in the register file panel.
Register	Registers the files displayed in the register file panel.
Register all files in a single job.	Select this check box to register all files added to the HotFolder panel in a single job.

2. Click the File select button in the HotFolder panel. Select a file in the Add window, and click the Register button. You can register multiple files, one after another. When you are finished, click the Close button to close the Add window. The registered files are displayed in the HotFolder panel.



3. Check that the job template to be used has been selected, and then click the Register button.

• It is also possible to display the HotFolder panel by dragging a file into the template list window.

• You can register a file by dragging it into the HotFolder panel, in addition to using the File Select button.

Job Simple Confirmation

Note

The Job Simple Confirmation window shows an overview of the job and the processing status of each workflow. This window is displayed only when a single job is selected. Click 🔚 to display this window.

000	RICOH TotalFlo	w Simply Prepress Client : GeneralUse	r@			
JobList Progress Log S	Š ystem					
📮 🔍 🖻 🕲 🖌 🖆 🕵 🗋 💈	≽ 🖋 🔛 ا 🐐	🔄 🗟 📾 🎄 🔶 🗑	et 46 46 Lill 1		•) 🔳 🙈
Smart Folder List Group Job Te	mplate					
job Name ▲ job.04 job.02 job.03 (Å job.03 (Å job.04 test_02	▼ Job Information	Job_02e Job Name: Job_02e Section Count: 4 Total Page Number: 104 Page Size: Ad Vertical Defec: Printer:133.224.48.114	Progress d Available only fo g Available only fo	Information	e Number(Page 0(0) 1(128) 0(0) 1(16) 0(0)	Custom
	Program	-				
Job Name	Page Assign	Cover Output	Progress	Information	e Number(Page	Custom (C
		Advertising Output	é			

Page Assign	The Page Assign view displays the page assignment status and the approval status when the approval command is set.				
Processing status in each section	The processing, approval, and proofreading statuses of workflows set in each section are displayed. The proofreading status is included in the output processing workflow only.				
Progress	The progress of each processing is indicated as a percentage. Each color has the meaning described below.				
	W	: Pages that have not been assigned			
		Pages that have been assigned			
	Processing	: Not processed yet			
		Completion of processing assigned to each workflow			
	(: Not processed yet			
		Signatures/pages that were approved			
		: Signatures/pages that are waiting for approval			
		Signatures/pages that were rejected			
	OK	INOT processed yet (cancellation of proofreading)			
		Signatures/pages that were proofread			

Smart Folder

The smart folder shows only the jobs and job templates that are filtered according to the specified conditions.

You can save multiple conditions for filtering to a smart folder. The saved smart folders are listed on the left side of the window. The jobs and job templates that match the conditions saved for the selected smart folder are displayed on the right side of the window.

There are two types of smart folders: system share smart folders that can be used on all clients and local smart folders that can be used only on a specific client.

00		RICOH Tota	alFlow Simply Prep	press Client : Gener	alUser@			
JobList Progress Log	Sys	Š tem						
0,0,0,0,1/60,0	🔁 🍣	🚳 🔐 🗸 🗙	💽 🖳 🕿	: 🞄 🛶 🗑	et 46 46 Lill			2 🙈
Smart Folder List Group	Job Tem	plate						
Smart Folder(System)	A P	Job Name 🔺	Priority	Job Status	Status	Information	tal File Number(Page Numb	Size 🛱
(Sauge) (Cancel)		Job_01	Normal	® ∓ ⊞ ≞	() × ()		0(0)	0.00 MB
Save Cancer		Job_02	Normal	🏀 Ŧ 🖽 👜	\odot \times \odot		0(0)	0.82 MB
▼ Job		Job_03	Normal	③ 〒田 由			0(0)	0.20 MB
Job(All)		JOD_04	Normal	1 10 1 H H	📔 🕼 🖉 😈 Output Pr		1(16)	2.61 MB
▼ Job Template								_
Job Template(All)								
								_
								_
	_							
					~)4 F
					Completed			
		lob Name	Priority A	lob Status	Status	Information	tal File Number(Page Numb	Size 🛱
	<u>^</u>	test pod	Normal	🕲 🔻 🖽 💼	Output C		1(16)	1.74 MB
Smart Folder(Local)								
T loh								
(i) (i) (i) (ii) (ii) (iii) (i								
▼ Job Template								_
Job Template(All)								
								_
)4 +

System share smart folder operation

Operation

1. Select the Smart Folder tab in the job list, and then click the Edit button for smart folder. The display area for the system share smart folder changes to the edit mode.

2. Display the right-click menu in the Smart Folder (System) area.

Add	Allows you to add the system share smart folder.
Edit	Allows you to edit the selected smart folder.
Сору	Allows you to copy the selected smart folder to the system.
Copy to local	Allows you to copy the selected smart folder to the client.
Delete	Allows you to delete the selected smart folder.

3. After the operation is completed, click the Save button in the Smart Folder (System) area.

$\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$	Smart Folder(Local)	
Name:		
Target: Job		
Search Condition: Match any	of following	
Job Name 🗘 Contains	•	 Add Delete
Customer Contains	•	Add Delete
		Save Close

Name	Allows you to specify the smart folder name.
Target	Allows you to select the search target for the smart folder. You can select jobs or job templates.
Search Condition	Allows you to set the search conditions. You can select All or any conditions for searching.
Add	Allows you to add a search condition.
Delete	Allows you to delete a search condition.

Setting a local smart folder as a system share smart folder

Operation

1. Select the smart folder to be shared by the systems in the Smart Folder (Local) area, and then click Copy to system in the right-click menu.

User-defined items

The job attributes can be added on each system. The attributes for the character string, value, list, and date type can be added freely. These added attributes are not only displayed in the job list, but can be used as filtering conditions for smart folders.

Operation 1. Select the Window -> Client command from the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client menu to display the Optional Items setting window.

2. Click the Edit button, and then select the Use Optional Items check box.

		chefte bettings		
				Save Cancel
Optional Items	🗹 Use Optional Items			Import Export
	+ - 🔺 💌 Display Name:		ID:	۵
	Type:	Character String 🛟	Mandatory	

+ -	Allows you to add or delete the defined item.		
	Allows you to change the display order of the defined items. The display order is the same as that for the Job Basic Setting window.		
Display Name	Allows you to set the names of the defined items. The names are then used for the basic setting of the job, item names in the Smart Folder window, and the table header names in the job list.		
Туре	 Allows you to select the type of the defined item. The handling during sorting and filtering differs. Character String List Ist Ist When List is selected, the input area for options is displayed. Enter the items for selection by delimiting them with a comma. Date Number		
Mandatory	Allows you to select the mandatory of defined item. • Optional item • Mandatory item only for jobs • Mandatory item for both jobs and job template		

$\Theta \cap \Theta$	Client Settings			
				Save Cancel
Optional Items	🗹 Use Optional Items			Import Export
	+ - 🔺 🔻 Display Name:	Print	ID: ID_Print	a
	Type:	Date \$	Mandatory item only for jobs	*
	+ - 🔺 🔻 Display Name:	Preson	ID: ID_Preson	8
	Type:	Character String \$	Mandatory item only for jobs	\$
	+ - 🔺 🔻 Display Name:	Area	ID: ID_Area	8
	Type:	List 🗘	Optional Item	\$
		Values(Comma separated)		
		East, West, South, North	<u>.</u>	

3. Make settings for the user-defined items, and then click the Save button.

Note

User-defined items can be imported and exported. Click the Export button to export the settings, and then import them to another TotalFlow Simply Prepress system. The same job attributes can be used with multiple TotalFlow Simply Prepress systems.
Basic job operations

This section describes the basic job operations in the main window.

Creating a new job

Create a new job. Click 🔲 on the toolbar or select the New -> Job command from the File menu. For more information about the operation, see "New job creation".

Input the job name, order code, and job template in the Job Basic Setting window, and then click the OK button. Set the job in the Action Plan window, which appears next.

For more information about the Action Plan window, see "Job setting procedure".

Creating a job using a template

Create a job based on a job template. Select a job template in the job template list, and then click 🔲 on the toolbar or select the New -> Job command from the File menu.

The subsequent steps are the same as when creating a new job. Therefore, for more information, see "Job setting procedure".

Opening a job

Select a job in the job list, and then click low on the toolbar or select the Job command from the File menu to display the Job Detail window. For more information about the Job Detail window operation, see "Job Details window".

Changing the job settings

You can directly display the Job Action Plan window and change the job settings. Select a job in the job list, and then click 🖋 on the toolbar or select the Properties command from the File menu. For more information about the Action Plan window operation, see "Job setting procedure".

Saving a job as a template

Save a job as a template. Select a job in the job list, and then click **u** on the toolbar or select the Save as Job Template command from the File menu.

Changing a job name

Change a job name. Select a job in the job list and then select the Change Name command from the Edit menu. It is also possible to change the order code.

Copying a job

Copy a job. Click **I**, on the toolbar to show the Copy window. Enter a name for the copy in Copy Name and, if necessary, order number in Order Code, and then click the OK button to copy the job. When you select the Copy with the registered files check box, files that are registered to the job are also copied.

0 0 0		Сору		
Copy name:	CopyOf job-001			
Order Code (JobID):	ej100513-00001			
Copy with the re	gistered files			
			ОК	Cancel

Deleting a job

You can delete a registered job. Click 👕 on the toolbar to show the Confirmation window. Click the OK button to delete the job.

Optimizing a job

Optimize a job. Click 🛃 on the toolbar or select the Edit -> Optimize command from the menu. Perform an

optimization to reduce the amount of disk space used by data on the server.

This operation deletes only the input data within a job. Once the data is optimized, it cannot be re-input.

0 0	Optimize	
Delete the re g job.When xecute Inpu nue?	egistered files of the followin you delete the files, cannot e t ticket.Do you want to conti	
job-003		
The followir	ıg jobs will be processed.	
Can	сеј Ок	

Creating a job backup

Create a job backup. Click 🧼 on the toolbar or select the File -> Backup command from the menu. If necessary, set the backup data output destination folder using the System Setup Tool in advance.

00	Backup	-	
ob for BackUp:		1	Execute
Job Name 🔺	Processing Result		
job-002			Close
Method of Creation Backup	Data		
📃 Do Optimize			
Enclosing Folder(Volu	me consideration, Verify:ON)		
🗹 Delete job after back	qt		
Back-up data output dest	ination folder:		
//localhost/general/out	put	Browse	

Jobs to Be Backed Up	Shows a list of jobs to be backed up. After creating a backup, an icon indicating the processing result for a job is					
	displayed in the Pro	cessing Result column.				
	Shows that the processing has been completed successful					
	🐴: Shows that the	📴 Shows that the processing has failed.				
	If the processin	If the processing has failed, the following message is displayed in the				
	Processing Result column.					
	Job Name 🔺	Processing Result				
	job-001	辩 Cannot backup the job that is under processing.				
Method of Creation Backup Data	Allows you to select	a method to create a backup.				
	Optimize	Select this check box to create a backup after optimizing the job.				
	Enclosing Folder	Select this check box to create a backup after packing				

the job.

backup.

output.

Select this check box to delete the job after creating its

Specify a folder to which the backup data is to be

Restoring	a	iob	

Restore a job. Click 🌍 on the toolbar or select the File -> Restore command from the menu. If necessary, set the Restoration destination JOBRoot folder using the System Setup Tool in advance.

00	Restore	
Restore:		Execute
Backup job ▲	Processing Result	
\\localhost\General		Close
		Add
		Delete
estoration destination JOBRoot folder:		

(Volume consideration,

Delete the job after

Back-up data output

destination folder

Verify: ON)

backup

Backup Jobs to Be Restored Shows a list of backup jobs to be restored. Click the Add button to specify the backup job to be restored. After it is restored, an icon indicating the processing result is displayed in the Processing Result column. ③: Shows that the processing has been completed successfully. 4: Shows that the processing has failed. If the processing has failed, the following message is displayed in the Processing Result column. Backup Jobs ▲ Processing Result \localhost\general\output\001

Processing Result

You can select multiple jobs to perform optimization, backup creation, and restoration.

Basic job template operations

This section describes the basic job template operations in the main window.

Creating a new job template

Click Create a job template based on a job template. Select a job template in the job template list, and then click **u** on the toolbar or select the New -> Job command from the File menu.

Input the job name, order code, and job template in the Job template Basic Setting window, and then click the OK button. Set the job in the Action Plan window, which appears next.

For more information about the Action Plan window, see "Job setting procedure".

Editing job template

You can display the Action Plan window and change the job template settings. Select a job template in the job template list, and then 🖋 click on the toolbar or select the Properties command from the File menu. For more information

about the Action Plan window operation, see "Job setting procedure".

Changing a job template name

Change a job template name. Select a job template in the job template list and then select the Change Name command from the Edit menu.

Copying a job template

Copy a job template. Click 🖏 on the toolbar to show the Copy window. Enter a name for the copy in Copy Name and click the OK button to copy the job template.

$\Theta \cap \Theta$		Сору	
Copy name:	CopyOf 001		
			OK Cancel

Deleting a job template

You can delete a registered job template. Click 🕤 on the toolbar to show the Confirmation window. Click the OK button to delete the job template.

Creating a job template backup

Create a job template backup. Click 📚 on the toolbar or select the File -> Backup command from the menu. If necessary, set the backup data output destination folder using the System Setup Tool in advance.

$\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$	Backup		
Selected Job template:			Execute
Job Template Name 🔺	Processing Result		Execute
001			Close
Method of Creation Backup	Data		
Enclosing Folder(Volu	me consideration, Verify:ON)		
Back-up data output desti	nation folder:		
//localhost/general/out	out	Browse	
,,			

Selected Job template	 Shows a list of job templates to be backed up. After creating a backup, an icon indicating the processing result for a job template is displayed in the Processing Result column. Shows that the processing has been completed successfully. Shows that the processing has failed. If the processing has failed, the following message is displayed in the Processing Result column. 				
	Job Template Name A Processing Result 001 Image: The job is already exists in the backup folder.				
Method of Creation Backup Data	Allows you to select a me	ethod to create a backup.			
	Enclosing Folder (Volume consideration, Verify: ON)	Select this check box to create a backup after packing the job template.			
	Back-up data output destination folder	Specify a folder to which the backup data is to be output.			

Restoring a job template

Restore a job template. Click $\stackrel{<}{\leqslant}$ on the toolbar or select the File -> Restore command from the menu. If necessary, set the Restoration destination JOBRoot folder using the System Setup Tool in advance.

⊖ ○ ⊙	Restore	
Restore:		Execute
Backup Jobs 🔺	Processing Result	Execute
\\localhost\general\output\job-002		Close
		Add
		Delete
Restoration destination JOBRoot folder:		
		1

Restore	Shows a list of backup jobs to be restored. Click the Add button to specify the backup job to be restored. After it is restored, an icon indicating the processing result is displayed in the Processing Result column. Shows that the processing has been completed successfully. Shows that the processing has failed. If the processing has failed, the following message is displayed in the Processing Result column				
Restoration destination JOBRoot	Backup Jobs ▲ Processing Result \\localhost\general\output\001 If The job is already exists in the system.				
folder	list.				

Note

You can select multiple job templates to perform optimization, backup creation, and restoration.

4. Jobs

This section describes the Job Details window and procedures to perform detailed settings of the job.

Job Details window

This window is used for job operations. A separate window opens for the operations of each job. The window allows you to perform job setting, file registration, page assignment, and output processing.

Job Details window layout

				N	Aenu bar				
Rice of Lapdra File of Lapdra	Register File Status Ready 6	Input I Preflight Success	Newjob Section Au Page Assign IP 20 Output Color Layer info.	Page Count 16	Valid 209.90278	Drigin Offset Origin Dxx Omm, Omm	0 deg. 0 deg.	cgistered Date LC May 2, 2016 M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M	Shortcut area Tool bar Main area
Job Information Page Job Name Section Nuto-Switching Section Nuto-Switching Softern Nuto-Switching Job Tomplate Job Tomplate Job Tomplate Customer Due Date Color Profile Created Date Automatic Deletion Keyword1 Comments Total File Number Size	//lie information Newdob Joynot RedOH TotalFlow Simp orginal RICOH TotalFlow Simp orginal RICOH TotalFlow Simp Orginal May 2, 2016 5:29:04 F Invalid 1	lly Prepress pe3-Coated V1 M	Vortice	ent/Message Progr	Operation Audit ess Status P ● A Com Bo ● ⑦ Com Fill	scess Target Commen dy-1-Front Factoy- p.pdf sample_	s Start Date	Finish Dal® 5 May 2, 2016	
Detaile	ed informatio	n area			Event and p	rocessing stat	us area		
Menu bar			Shows the	menus.	. For more i	information	, see "N	Aenus bar	<i>"</i> .
Tool bar			Shows the	icon bu	uttons to me	anage jobs	. For mo	ore inform	ation, see "Toolbar".
Shortcut are	ea		The shortcu change the of operatic show the w	it area main o n. They vindow ion Pla	contains th area view. y are shorto s required	te main ope The main o cut buttons for the ope Changes	eration l peratio used to ration. the viev	outtons for n buttons o instantly c v to the Ac	r jobs and the icons to are arranged in the order hange the view and to ction Plan editing mode.
			Regi	ster File)	Changes	the mai nent viev	n area vie w and sha	w to the registered file

The Job Details window is comprised of the following parts.

	Input	Changes the main area view to the registered file management view and shows the Input Process Ticket window.
	Page Assign	Changes the main area view to the Activity board and shows the Assign window.
	Output	Changes the main area view to the Activity board and shows the Output Process Ticket window.
	Changes the main a	rea view to the Action Plan view.
	Changes the main a	area view to the registered file management view.
	Changes the main a	rea view to the Activity Board view.
	Changes the main a	rea view to the imposition scheme management view.
Main area	Use the buttons in the short- use the registered file mana	cut area to change the view of the main area. You can agement view or the layout management view.
Detailed information area	Shows the detailed information of the job, and the detailed information of the page, file, section, signature, or flat that is selected in the main area.	
Event and processing status area	Shows the progress of proc logs, and processing result	cessing, event information including errors, operation s, allowing you to select the corresponding tab.

Menu bar

The menu bar in the Job Details window is comprised of the File, Edit, Action, Settings, View, and Help menus.

File	
Register File	Allows you to register a file to the job. Shows the File Select window and allows you to select a file to be registered.
Action Plan	Shows the action plan window.
Close	Closes the Job Details window.
Edit	
Delete File	Deletes the selected file from the job.
Action	
Input	Shows the Input Process Ticket window.
Page Assign	Shows the Page Assign window.
Output	Shows the Output Process Ticket window.
Approve/Approve	Approves the selected file, page, or signature (plate).
Approve/Reject	Rejects the selected file, page, or signature (plate).

Proof/OK	Sets the proof OK status for the page or imposed surface. A page is set as the proof OK status if you have selected a page on the activity board, and a surface is set as the proof OK status if you have selected the final output surface in layout management view.
Proof/Cancel	Cancels the proof OK status for the page or imposed surface.
Settings	
JDF/Audit	Notifies the result to MIS.
Set Folio Marks	Sets folio marks to the pages in the imposition scheme.
Proof Count Setting	Allows you to set the number of editions for the selected page. You can set any value.
Shift Pages	Move the assigned page.
Assign Blank Page	Assigns a blank page to a page in the imposition scheme.
Un-assign Page	Cancels imposition of a page that is assigned to the imposition scheme.
Adjust Offset	Allows you to change the offset of a page that is assigned to the imposition scheme.
Size Adjustment	Allows you to change the enlargement/reduction ratio of a page that is assigned to the imposition scheme.
View	
Zoom View	Shows the zoom view of the selected signature (plate).
End Editing	Editing is considered to be in progress on pages that are being displayed as PDF so that operations such as having tickets issued for them cannot be performed while they are being displayed. Click this button to cancel the editing-in-progress status.
Open All	Opens all folders for the files and sections in the tree.
Close All	Closes all folders for the files and sections in the tree.
Action Plan	Changes the main area to the Action Plan view for setting a job workflow.
Registered Files	Changes the main area to the page list view for file management.
Activity Board	Changes the main area to the Activity Board view.
Show Layout/Thumbnail	Changes the main area to the thumbnail view for layout management.
Show Layout/Icon	Changes the main area to the icon view for layout management.
Show Layout/Page List	Changes the main area to the page list view for layout management.
Help	

Manual	Shows the online manual.
About	Shows the version information of the client and server, and the name of the connected host.

Toolbar

9	Deletes the selected file from the job.
۲	Approves the selected file, page, or signature (plate).
×	Rejects the selected file, page, or signature (plate).
ØK	Sets the proof OK status for the page or imposed surface.
6	Cancels the proof OK status for the page or imposed surface.
Pİ	Sets folio marks to the pages in the imposition scheme.
*	Allows you to shift the page.
1+	Allows you to set the number of editions for the selected page.
	Assigns a blank page to a page in the imposition scheme.
	Cancels the page(s) assigned to the imposition scheme.
2	Allows you to change the offset of a page that is assigned to the imposition scheme.
I	Allows you to change the enlargement/reduction ratio of a page that is assigned to the imposition scheme.
Q,	Shows the zoom view of the selected signature (plate).
PDF	Shows the PDF file of the selected page.
6	Cancels the editing-in-progress status of the page.
¥	Opens all folders for the files and sections in the tree.
5	Closes all folders for the files and sections in the tree.
MIS	Transmits Progresses or Results to MIS.
0	Shows the online manual.
3	Hides the pages that are not to be output in the free page sequence imposition.
	Changes the main area to the page list view in the Show Layout window.
44	Changes the main area to the icon view in the Show Layout window.
E,	Changes the main area to the thumbnail view in the Show Layout window. Switches between show and hide of the thumbnail view in the Activity Board window.

Main area

The main area is used to perform various operations while switching the Action Plan, Registered File Management, Activity Board, and Layout Management windows. The details of each window are described later.

Detailed display area

This area shows detailed information about the job as well as detailed information about the item selected in the main area. You can switch between the job information and the information about the selected item using the tabs.

The selected target information displayed in the main area is file or page information if Registered File Management is selected, and section or signature (side) information if Layout Management is selected.

When Layout Management is selected in the main area, the output history information is also displayed.

Job information view

Job Information	Page/File Information	Customer Information	
Job Name	job-001		n
Job Root	jobroot		
Job Template	original		
Job ID	ej110621-00013		
Customer			
Due Date	Aug 31, 2011		
Creator	GeneralUser		
Created Date	Jun 21, 2011 6:56:22 PM	1	
HotFolder	Invalid		
Auto Process	Input		U
Auto Page Assign	Invalid		
Keyword1			
Keyword2			1
Commente			1

Page/File Information view

Job Information	Page/File Information Customer Information
File	NewsBox_Vol13.pdf.1.pdf
File Type	Polished
Page Size	214.84167mm x 296.68611mm
Last Update	Jun 23, 2011 5:46:55 PM
Font	failed
Image	success
Color Information	Cyan
	Magenta
	Yellow
	Black
Layer info.	-

Section/Signature Information view

Job Information	Section/Signature Information	Customer Information
Section ID	ej110623-00007-n110629	_084052448_000001
Section Name	新規セクション	
Progress	000	
ImpositionType	Section Layout	
Imposition Name		
Comments		
Total Signature Nu	mber	
Total Surface Num	ber	

Customer Information

	Job Information	
Section/Sig	nature Information	Customer Information
Customer ID	2002	
Customer	SCREEN Printing	
Contanct Person	Mike Suzuki	
Phone Number	02404-9692-0	
E-mail address	suzuki@screen.co.jp	
Company	SCREEN Group LTD	
Zip Code	617-0000	
Address	X-X, Horikawa, Kyoto City	

Output History

This tab shows the history of the output processing performed in the selected workflow, section, or fold/signature.





You can perform the output processing using history information by selecting the history item and then clicking Output in the shortcut area.

History display area

Shows the progress of job processing and errors if they occurred. Select the Progress tab, Event/Message tab or Audit tab to change the display.

Progress view

Progress	Event/Message	Operation A	udit			<u>. </u>
Workflow	Progress	Status	Process Target	Comments	Start Date	Ę
#		Completed	GoGAI[1-4].pdf		Dec 20, 2010 8	
						U
						U

Workflow	Shows the workflow for the processing currently in progress. The icon for the processing currently in progress flashes, and the icons for processing that is finished are partially transparent.
Progress	Shows a progress bar indicating the status of the processing.
Status	Shows the status of the processing.

	Setting up
	Standby
	Processing
	○: Held
	Cancel
	States Aborted
	O: Normal end
	🤭 : Approval waiting
Process Target	Shows the processing target, such as the file name, section name, or signature number.
Start Date	Shows the date and time when processing started.
Finish Date	Shows the date and time when the processing was finished.
Process Job ID	Shows the process job ID assigned to the processing.
Host	Shows the name of the host where the processing is being run.
Comments	Shows comments about the ticket.
rou can perform the foll	owing operations on each process snown in the progress view.
	Cancels the processing in the selected workflow.

~	
*	Approves processing that is waiting approval and continues to the next process.
<u></u>	Compiles the results of jobs that have been executed.

Event/Message view

Progress	Event/Message	Operation	Audit		噗 ✔ 世
Level 🔻	Host	Mess	age	Occur Date	
¢	WIN-SXD6N	<i>≸</i> [800110] I	nput(Advan	Dec 16, 201	
Level			Shows t	ne importanc	e of the event that
			🔇: Fata	l error	
			\rm 🛛 : Erro	r	
			😲 : Que	ery	
			😍 : Ope	eration reque	est
			🔥 : War	ning	
			🤹: Info	rmation	
			R: Repo	ort	
Message			Shows th	ne event mes	sage.
Occur Da	te		Shows th	ne date and	time that the event
Host			Shows th	ne host wher	e the event that occ

You can check the event details by double-clicking the event.

00		Event Detail
	Occur Date:	Dec 16, 2010 11:31:25 AM
	Code:	800110
Information	Generation source:	001
mormation	Category:	1
	ID:	pj101216-0000500001
Input(A	dvanced) Report	
The following	logs were output.	
	5	
Detail	Report	
MSG:ReportM	essagePPP.txt.	
) 4 Y
		Close

Operation

Operational histories on the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client and the printer are listed as follows.

Progress Event/	Message Ope	aration Audit	嗅♥世
◀ ▶ 1 - 12			
Operated Date 🔻	User Name	IP	Detail
Dec 8, 2010 3:42:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Open job. 📉 👝
Dec 8, 2010 3:37:	AutoPilot	172.30.14.200	Accept auto Input process
Dec 8, 2010 3:37:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Register File. (File: GoGAl3
Dec 8, 2010 3:37:	AutoPilot	172.30.14.200	Accept auto Input process
Dec 8, 2010 3:37:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Register File. (File: GoGAl2
Dec 8, 2010 3:37:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Open job. 🤎
Dec 8, 2010 3:19:	AutoPilot	172.30.14.200	Accept auto Input process
Dec 8, 2010 3:19:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Register File. (File: GoGAl1 🛣
Dec 8, 2010 3:19:	GeneralUser	172.30.14.238	Open job. 🔻

Operated Date	Shows the date and time of processing execution.
User Name	Shows the name of the user who performed the operation.
IP	Shows the IP address of the client or printer that was used for the operation.
Detail	Shows the operation description.

If you double-click an operation on the list, the Operation Detail window is displayed.

0 0			Operation Detail	
Operated Date:	Jan 16, 2	012 12:03:06 PM		
User Name:	GeneralU	lser		
IP:	172.30.1	4.156		
Detail:	Open job).		
Detail Operation	n:			_
Operated D	Date 🔻		Detail	Π
-				
			Close	5
				1

Audit

The Audit tab lists the processing results of each job.

	-	-	-		
Progress Event/	Message Operatio	on Audit			■ ▲ 正
Process Job ID	Processing Result	Printer Name	Printer Model	Start Date	1

Process Job ID	Shows the job ID that is assigned to processing.
Progress Result	Shows the processing results.
Printer Name	Shows the name of the printing system that executed the output processing.
Printer Type	Show the name of the printer model that executed the output processing.
Total Time	Shows the time required for the processing.
Ink Amount	Shows the total ink volume used for printing of a selected job.
Paper Amount	Shows the total sheet volume used for printing of a selected job.
Date	Shows the start date and time of the selected job.

Double-clicking Audit allows you to check the details of the processing results.

0 0	Audit Detail							
Process Job ID:	pj091218-00009							
Printer Name:	TP-J-SX-001							
Printer Model :	Truepress JetSX							
Start Date	Dec 21, 2010 1:44:05 PM							
Processing Result	Completed							
▼ Total Time: 0:0	00:50							
Processing T	Time:0:00:45 Stopping Time:0:00:05							
Paper Amount:	87Sheets							
Media Name	:Matt-A Printed:80Sheets Wasted:5Sheets							
Media Name	:Matt-B Printed:0Sheets Wasted:2Sheets							
✓ Ink Amount: 11	157ul							
Cyan:123ul								
Magenta:22	Gul							
Yellow:196u	1							
Black:365ul	Black:365ul							
Cote:165ul								
	Close							

Action Plan

This window is used to set the automatic processing for a job. You can make settings including basic settings for the job, input/output ticket settings, and section/imposition scheme settings. For more information about the operation, see "Job setting procedure".

Registered File Management

In the Registered File Management, you can perform management tasks for the files registered to a job, such as registering files, running input processing, approving files or pages, and checking input processing results.

00			Nev	wJob (Section Au	uto-Switching:In	ivalid)					
💱 Action Plan 🕨 🚺 F	tegister File 🕨 ş	喜 Input 🕨 📱	Page Assign 🕨	• 💇 Output						I) 🔜 🗉	
	* \$\$ \$ \$	BX 9, 1	• 🦻 🏸 🕻	0							
File	Status	Preflight	Color	Layer info.	Page Count	Page Size	PDF Origin	Offset Origin	Rotation Angle	Registered Date	LĘ
🔻 🔁 File.pdf	Ready	success			16	209.90278	TrimBox	0mm, 0mm		May 2, 2016	Μ
File.pdf.1.pdf#1						209.90278			0 deg.		Μ
File.pdf.2.pdf#2						209.90278			0 deg.		M
File.pdf.3.pdf#3						209.90278			0 deg.		Μ
File.pdf.4.pdf#4						209.90278			0 deg.		M
File.pdf.5.pdf#5						209.90278			0 deg.		M
File.pdf.6.pdf#6						209.90278			0 deg.		Μ
Den ve ve			-								••

File	Shows the names and page numbers of registered files.
Status	Shows the current processing status of the job.
Preflight	Shows the preflight processing results.
Font	Shows whether or not font embedding was successful.
Page Count	Shows the number of pages included in the file.
Color	Shows color information.
PDF Origin	Shows the type of box that is used as a reference when the page is imported.
Offset Origin	Shows the amount of offset from the origin of the finished page in the signature template file to the origin of the finished page file to be input.
Rotation Angle	Shows the rotation angle specified during the input processing or when pages are assigned.
Page Size	Shows the page size.
Registered Data	Shows the date and time when the file was registered.
Last Update	Shows the date and time when the file was last updated.

Activity Board

This window is used to perform operations such as page assignment and proofreading according to the pagination.

As the progress of each page can be checked easily, this window is useful as a tool for sharing the progress information with sales, engineering, and other operation sections. Moreover, the section can be set checking the page order.

Therefore, you can set easily the last-minute change and the complicated binding type.

0	● ● NewJob (Section Auto-Switching:Invalid)										
9	Action Plan	▶ 🚺 R	egisterFile 🕨 羣	Input 🕨	Page Assign 🕨 🍕	Output 📎				💷 🛄 I	
	v X 🖩		****		、 シ 5 1 1 1 1						:= 🖪
No. 🔺	Section	Folio	File Name	ssignmer	Status	Proof Status	Color	Page Size	Layout Origin	Registered Date	Rotation / 10
1	Body#1	Body1	CMYK Or	•	1 Output:Completed	[2]	S 1	210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 6:13:01 PM	0 deg.
2	Body#2	Body2	File.pdf#2	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
3	Body#3	Body3	File.pdf#3	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
4	Body#4	Body4	File.pdf#4	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
5	Body#5	Body5	File.pdf#5	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
6	Body#6	Body6	File.pdf#6	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
7	Body#7	Body7	File.pdf#7	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
8	Body#8	Body8	File.pdf#8	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
9	Body#9	Body9				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
10	Body#10	Body10				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
11	Body#11	Body11				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
12	Body#12	Body12				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
13	Body#13	Body13				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
14	Body#14	Body14				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
15	Body#15	Body15				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
16	Body#16	Body16				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
Ç) 4 F
A *						, î					
1.		2	2		5	6	7	N 28	9	10 1	1
1. T.	Magenia	4	1	- I I T	,	0	1	0	9	10 1	-
Cyan	Black								00000		
		2	2		4 5	6		7 5	2 00000	d 10000000	
Orange	1/8	~	9		- V	0		· · ·	· 00000		
									- ICCCC		
Rody	1	воау2	BODA3	Body	4 RodA2	RodAp	Body	Body8	RodAa	Boay10 Bo	ay11
C)) 4 F

Page list area

The status and information for each page are displayed in a table form.

0	9				NewJob (Section Auto-S	witching:In	valid)			
9	Action Plan	🕨 🛃 Reg	ister File 🕨 曇	Input 🕨	Page Assign 🕨 🍕	📎 Output					
	v X 🖩		1 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12	XIQ	、 シ ふ ツ ⑦						🗄 🖪
No. 🔺	Section	Folio	File Name	ssignmer	Status	Proof Status	Color	Page Size	Layout Origin	Registered Date	Rotation / 🕮
1	Body#1	Body1	CMYK_Or	•	1 Output:Completed	[2]	S 1	210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 6:13:01 PM	0 deg.
2	Body#2	Body2	File.pdf#2	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
3	Body#3	Body3	File.pdf#3	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
4	Body#4	Body4	File.pdf#4	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
5	Body#5	Body5	File.pdf#5	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
6	Body#6	Body6	File.pdf#6	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
7	Body#7	Body7	File.pdf#7	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
8	Body#8	Body8	File.pdf#8	•	1 Output:Completed	[1]		210mm x 297mm	Center/Spread:OFF	May 2, 2016 5:30:10 PM	0 deg.
9	Body#9	Body9				[0]	_	210mm x 297mm			
10	Body#10	Body10				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
11	Body#11	Body11				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
12	Body#12	Body12				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
13	Body#13	Body13				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
14	Body#14	Body14				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
15	Body#15	Body15				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
16	Body#16	Body16				[0]		210mm x 297mm			
(****) 4 F
L						· ·					
1.	A Statement	2	3	1 1	5	6	7	8	9	10 1	1
1.1	Magenia	4	1		,	0	1	0	9	10 1	+
Cyan	Black								00000		
		2	2		4 5	6		7 9	2 00000		0000
Orange	1/8	2	5			0		· ·	 IOCOC 		0000
									- 100000		
								-			
Body	1	Body2	Body3	Body	4 Body5	Body6	Body	7 Body8	Body9	Body10 Bod	dy11
-											

No.	Shows the sequential number of the pagination.
Section	Shows the name of the section to which the page belongs.
Folio	Shows the folio marks.
Binding Type	Shows the binding method and binding direction.

Page Size	Shows the name of the file being assigned. When the file has not been output since it was assigned, the file name is preceded by the New icon.
File Name	Shows the name of the file being assigned.
Assignment	Shows the page assignment status, such as spread page.
Layout Origin	Shows the layout origin for executing page assignment.
Rotation Angle	Shows the rotation angle specified for the assigned pages (input data).
Scale (H x V)	Shows the enlargement/reduction ratio set when pages are assigned.
Additional Offset	Shows the offset values specified with the offset adjustment function.
Offset	Shows the offset values that are calculated automatically when pages are assigned.
Status	Shows the page status.
Color	Shows the information for colors included in the page.
Proof Status	Shows the number of editions and the proofreading status.
Registered Date	Shows the date and time when the file including this page was registered.

Note

Automatic page assignment is available by setting folio marks in signatures in the order they are listed.

Preview area

Pages are previewed in order of page number. You can check the spread page status, page assignment positions, and correct assignment of the contents.

Layout Management

In the Layout Management, you can perform tasks for output, such as managing sections, assigning pages, adjusting page positions, checking the imposition status, and running output processing.

There are three types of displays in the Layout management, page list view, icon view and thumbnail view, and you can switch between the views using the View menu or by clicking the \blacksquare , \blacksquare or \blacksquare , button. No matter which view you are viewing, a list of signatures is shown on the left side of the window, and the content of what you selected in this list is displayed in the display area on the right.

In the signature list, the icon that shows the signature status is displayed for each signature.

		00			Jo	b_05 (S	ection Auto-9	witching:Invalid)				
		💱 Action Plan 🕨 🚺 R	tegister File 🕨 曇 Ing	out 🕨 🕎	Page Assig	n 🕨 🔮	Output			ſ	I II II II	
	_	🍵 🗸 💥 🐼 🧐 🖻	🕸 🖏 🕸 🗮 🖾 💢	🔍 🐉	🦻 🈕	0						i Id
		Section	No. A Section Nan	ne Signature	Sheet	Side	Folio	Page Size	File Name Stat	us Layout Origin	Spread Rotation Ang	le t
		 Section1 [1 Output] 	1(1) Section1	1	1	Front	Section1_1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
		▶ 1(1)	2(2) Section1	1	1	Back	Section1_2	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
		▶ 2(1) 3 8	3(3) Section1	1	1	Back	Section1_3	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
		▶ 3(1) 3 8	4(4) Section1	1	1	Front	Section1_4	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
C' I I' I		▶ 4(1)	5(5) Section1	2	1	Front	Section1_5	210mm x 2	📩 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
Signature list		 FreePageSequence [1 Ou 	6(6) Section1	2	1	Back	Section1_6	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
-			7(7) Section1	2	1	Back	Section1_7	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			8(8) Section1	2	1	Front	Section1_8	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			9(9) Section1	3	1	Front	Section1_9	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			10(10) Section1	3	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			11(11) Section1	3	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			12(12) Section1	3	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			13(13) Section1	4	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			14(14) Section1	4	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			15(15) Section1	4	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1
			16(16) Section1	4	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	NewsBox V	Center/Spread:OFF	0 deg.	1

Page list view

The page list view shows a list of pages that have been assigned.

0	0 0					Jo	b_05 (S	ection Auto-S	witching:Invalid	i)					
WWV	🖉 Action Plan 🕨	Regi:	ster File	🕨 🚭 In	put 🕨 🙀	Page Assi	gn 🕨 ≶	Output 🖉] 📖 [
	🗸 💥 🐼 🚱	P5		🐂 🔀 🃜	🔍 ¥	5 🏴	0							III ##	Eq.
	Section	4	No. 🔺	Section Na	ne Signature	Sheet	Side	Folio	Page Size	File Name	Status	Layout Origin	Spread	Rotation Angle	. IÇ
•	Section1 [1 Output	1	1(1)	Section1	1	1	Front	Section1_1	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
•	1(1)	>	2(2)	Section1	1	1	Back	Section1_2	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
•	2(1)		3(3)	Section1	1	1	Back	Section1_3	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
•	3(1) 👪 🖥	>	4(4)	Section1	1	1	Front	Section1_4	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
•	4(1) 👪 🚳		5(5)	Section1	2	1	Front	Section1_5	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
•	FreePageSequence	1 Ou	6(6)	Section1	2	1	Back	Section1_6	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			7(7)	Section1	2	1	Back	Section1_7	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			8(8)	Section1	2	1	Front	Section1_8	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			9(9)	Section1	3	1	Front	Section1_9	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			10(10)	Section1	3	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			11(11)	Section1	3	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
		~	12(12)	Section1	3	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			13(13)	Section1	4	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			14(14)	Section1	4	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			15(15)	Section1	4	1	Back	Section1	210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1
			16(16)	Section1	4	1	Front	Section1	210mm x 2	NewsBox_V		Center/Spread:OFF		0 deg.	1

No.	Shows the number.
Section Name	Shows the name of the section.
Signature	Shows the signature number.
Sheet	Shows the sheet number.
Side	Shows whether the side is the front or the back.
Folio	Shows the folio marks.
Page Size	Shows the page size.
File Name	Shows the name of the file being assigned.
Status	Shows the page status.
Layout Origin	Shows the layout origin.
Rotation Angle	Shows the rotation angle specified for the assigned pages (input data).
Scale (H x V)	Shows the enlargement/reduction ratio set when pages are assigned.
Base Offset	Shows the offset value that is calculated when the page is assigned.
Color	Shows the color information.
Additional Offset	Shows the offset value that is set at the Adjust Offset window.
Spread	Shows whether the page is a spread page or not, and the other spread page number.

lcon view

Icon view allows you to check the information for all of the pages and the status of the signatures in imposed format. In the section list on the left, the icon that shows the status is displayed for each signature.



Page icon list

(b)	Shows that the page is waiting for approval.
v	Shows that the page has been approved.
¥,	Shows that the page has been rejected.
	Shows the status of the process colors used on the page. This is not displayed if no process colors are being used.
X	This is displayed if the page is monochrome.
S	This is displayed if spot colors are used on the page. The number on the right side of the icon shows the number of spot colors.
Ð	Automatically sets pages that are being displayed as PDF to editing-in-progress status. While editing is in progress, operations cannot be performed on those pages. To cancel, select cancel the editing-in-progress status, select cancel in the menu or click the cancel icon button.

Signature icon list

0	Shows that the signature is waiting for approval.
v	Shows that the signature has been approved.
¥,	Shows that the signature has been rejected.
£8	Shows that the output color settings for the signature are enabled.
5	Shows that the file with layer information is assigned to the signature and that versioning output is possible.

Signature	status	icon	list
-----------	--------	------	------

Assignment Status	
55	Shows that none of the pages in the signature are assigned.
50	Shows that some of the pages in the signature have been assigned.
5	Shows that all of the pages in the signature have been assigned.

Output Processing Status

6	Shows that the signature output has not been performed.
8	Shows that the signature output has partially completed.
۵	Shows that the signature output has completed.

Thumbnail view

Thumbnail view allows you to check thumbnails for all of the pages and the status of the signatures in imposed format.



Job setting procedure

This section describes how to make job settings using the Action Plan window.

With a section auto-switching job, when a file is registered, only the sections that satisfy the required conditions will be displayed.

Action Plan Window Layout

The Action Plan window is composed of the following four major areas. The size of the displayed areas for setting each workflow can be changed with one touch of the button on the upper right of the window, and the operation window can be enlarged.



Note

Property

When you click the button on the left edge in the Property setup area of the Action Plan window, the Property window is displayed. Property window consists of four windows: Basic Setting, Page Import, Option Setting, and Optional Items. You can switch a window by selecting the setting item on the left.

00	0		Job_02e (Section Auto-Switching:Invalid)		
9	Action Pla	n 🕨 🚦	🕽 Register File Þ 📮 Input Þ 🕎 Page Assign Þ 🧇 Output		
<u></u>	Job_02e	Total I Color I	age Number:104 Auto Page Assign:Valid Auto-BackUp:Invalid Automatic Deletion:Invalid Profile:DS_JapanColor2001 type3-Coated V1 Prior output intent:OFF	B 🕐	Edit
Input	(Output	_	٩
			🍋 🛍		
			Cover Page Count:4 Cover by. Page StzeA Verti Image State Averti Image State Averti Binding StdeLeft Image State Averti Image State Averti Binding Type-Perf Image State Averti Image State Averti Output Color Image State Averti Image State Averti		
			Page Count:64 Page Size:A4 Verti Binding Side:Aref Binding Side:Aref Output Color		
		•	Body2 Page Storm: 32 Page Size A4 Verti Binding Type Page Size A4 Binding Type Page Size A4 Distribution Content of the Size A4 Binding Type Page Binding Content of the Size A4 Binding Type Binding Content of the Size A4 Binding Type Page Binding Content of the Size A4 Binding Type Binding Content of the Size A4 Binding Content of		
			Advertising Page Count:4 Page SizeA Verti Binding TypePeterf Output Color ■		

Basic Setting

This window is used to make the basic information settings for the job, such as the customer name and due date.

	Basic Setting		
			Save Cancel
lob Name: lob Root: Section Auto-Switching: lob Type: Priority: Color Label: Copies: Customer: Due Date: Keyword1: Keyword2:	New Job jobroot Invalid None		
	ob Name: ob Root: iection Auto-Switching: ob Type: Yriority: Color Label: Copies: Customer: Sue Date: Keyword1: Keyword1:	ob Name: New Job ob Root: jobroot iection Auto-Switching: Invalid ob Type: None : Yriority: Normal ‡ Color Label: none ‡ Color Label: . Customer: . Sustomer: . Sustomer: . Sustomer: . Sustomer: . Sustomer: .	ob Name: New Job ob Root: jobroot iection Auto-Switching: Invalid ob Type: None triority: Normal Color Label: none Colors:

Job Name	Shows the job name that was entered in the Basic Setting window.
Job Root	Shows the name of the folder to store the job that was selected in the Basic Setting window.

Priority	 Allows you to select a priority level for the job processing from pulldown list. Top : Setting Top allows jobs to be processed ahead of those for which High or Normal is set. High : Setting High allows jobs to be processed ahead of those for which Normal is set. However, these jobs must first wait until the processing of all Top priority jobs is finished. Normal:
	Setting Normal causes jobs to wait until the processing of all Top or High priority jobs is finished.
Color Label	Allows you to select a color label from the pulldown list. • None • Red • Orange • Yellow • Green • Blue • Purple • Pink
Copies	Allows you to specify the number of copies printed for this job. The number of copies specified here is sent to the printer.
Job Type	Allows you to specify the type of print created with this job. Shows an icon in the job list according to the product type selected here.
Customer	Shows the customer name of the job.
Due Date	Shows the due date of the job.
Keyword 1	Shows the information entered into Keyword1 in the basic settings for the job.
Keyword2	Shows the information entered into Keyword2 in the basic settings for the job.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.

Page Import

This window is used to make settings for automatic page assignment and target color space.

Save	Cancel
 Import layer info. Color Profile: Option Setting Optional Items Prior output intent Vauto Page Assign Layout Origin: Center ‡ Input Data Auto Scaling Spread Apply to cover pages Origin: Center ‡ 	

Use Target ICC	Allows you to specify the color space for conversion that is included in the input data. Select this check box when you use the offset simulation mode. The input data is converted to the target color space via the color space specified as the intermediate target color. For more information about the offset simulation mode, see "Input Color Setting". For more information about the default ICC profiles, see "Input color space" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register an ICC profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".		
	Prior output intent:	Select this check box to use the output intent ICC profile that belongs to the input PDF file instead of the ICC profile specified on the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.	
Auto Page Assign	Select this check box when you wish to assign the registered data page to the section (imposition scheme) automatically.		
	Layout Origin:	Layout Origin: Allows you to select the reference point for page assignment. Specify the layout origin for the data page within the page on the imposition scheme. You can select from Lower Left, Center, and Upper Left.	
	Input Data Auto Scaling	Allows you to enlarge or reduce the assignment pages of the target file so that the pages fit the page size of the assignment location.	
	Spread:	When the size of the data page corresponds to 2 pages, selecting this check box spreads the data page to the left and right (top and bottom) pages on the imposition scheme automatically as a spread page.	
	Apply to cover pages:	When you select this check box, the first and last pages on the imposition scheme are regarded as a spread page. This option is effective when the cover page has been created using spread data.	

 Origin:
 Allows you to specify the reference point in spread pages that is used for page assignment. You can select from Below Left, Center, Below Right, and Below Justify.

 Note
 Macros available for new job names
The following macros are available.
• %H.%h: Hot folder name
• %L,%l: Date of creation (shortened form)
• %N,%n: Input file name

 Note
 For details of Input Data Auto Scaling, see "Assigning pages" below.

Option Setting

00

This window is used to make settings for the operations to be performed after the job processing has been completed.

		basic setting	
			Save Cancel
 Basic Setting Page Import Option Setting Optional Items 	Auto-BackUp/Automatic D Initial Date For Reckoning: Expiration Days:	eletion Last Output Date 30 ume consideration, Verify:ON) itination folder: ition	Browse

Initial Date For Reckoning	 Allows you to set the reference day for automatic deletion or backup. Jobs are deleted or backed up when the number of days specified in Expiration Days has passed from the day specified here. You can select from Created Date, Due Date, Expiration Days, and Last Output Date. Created Date: Means the date and time when the job is created. Due Date: Means the date and time set to "Due Date" in the basic setting of properties. Expiration Days: Means the first date and time when all output of all signatures are completed. Last Output Date: Means the final time when the output processing is to be completed. This is updated every time the output processing is executed. Immediately after the output processing is completed.
Expiration Days	Allows you to specify the number of days until automatic deletion or backup is executed. A number greater than 0 can be specified. When 0 is specified, the processing is executed within 1 hour after the expiration. If the limit expires while the system is stopped, the processing is executed within 1 hour after the system starts up. This item is not displayed when Immediately after the output is completed is selected for Initial Date For Reckoning.
Auto-BackUP	 Select this check box to back up jobs after a specified period has passed. Optimize: When you select this check box, input data is deleted first to reduce the job size and then backup is executed. Enclosing Folder: When you select this check box, jobs are ZIP-compressed and backed up as one file. Back-up data output destination folder: Allows you to specify a folder to which the job backup data is to be output.
Enable Automatic Deletion	Select this check box to delete jobs after a specified period has passed. When automatic backup is specified, the jobs are deleted after the backup processing.

User-defined item option settings

Automatic backup or deletion

The window below allows you to make settings for the user-defined items that were set for the system in Client Setting.

Print:	Aug 30, 2013	•	
Person:			
Area:	West	+	

N		-
	0	re

The items defined in Client Setting are displayed as items in Optional Items.

		in part	
			Save Cancel
<<<			Import
Process		Workflow	
Input Process		Input Auto-Trap Process	
Auto-Trap	Name:	New Ticket	
	Created Date:	May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM	
OutlinePDF -Advance	Last Update:	May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM	
	· Priority:	Normal	
	Comments:	sample_Comment	
	Process Process Input Process Input Process <td>Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput P</td> <td>Verticity Workflow Process Workflow Input Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput Process Auto-Trap Imput Process Name: Name: New Ticket Created Date: May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM Last Update: May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM Priority: Normal Comments: Sample_Comment</td>	Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput P	Verticity Workflow Process Workflow Input Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput Process Imput Process Auto-Trap Imput Process Name: Name: New Ticket Created Date: May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM Last Update: May 2, 2016 1:55:42 PM Priority: Normal Comments: Sample_Comment

Publish a ticket	Select this check box to issue an input ticket for processing an input data file that matches the conditions. If this check box is not selected, the ticket is not issued.		
	Import	Clicking this button allows you to select the existing input processing ticket. Since the selected ticket is copied into the job, you can edit the ticket without affecting the original one.	
	Ticket editing area	Allows you to directly create and edit the ticket.	

Importing input conditions

You can import the input conditions from other jobs/job templates. Clicking in the upper section of the Input workflow/Page Proof setting area opens the Job/Job Template select window. All input conditions specified for the selected job/job template in this window are loaded. When the new input conditions are imported, the input conditions specified before the import will be lost.

Import Input Settings	×
💿 Job 🔵 Job Template	
Job / Job Template Name: Job_01	
Import Cancel	

Modifying an input condition

Clicking for the input condition you wish to modify shows the Input Condition window. Edit the conditions as necessary, and then click the Save button. Clicking the Input processing ticket icon allows you to edit the ticket and clicking the allows you to change the input color setting.

Input Color Setting

Make the color conversion settings for input processing execution. The input color setting allows you to select whether to apply a unified setting for the whole job or use a different setting for each input condition (input processing ticket). The menu can be switched by using setting (total setting) and $\frac{1}{6}$ (separate setting) on the upper section of the Input workflow/Page Proof setting area. In both cases, the setting details are the same.

Input color setting

The following describes the details of the Input Color Setting window.

Input C	Color	Setting			×	
				Save	ancel	
RCB		sRGB IEC61966-2.1		ICC Conversion Setting		
ROD		🗹 Use Embedded profile		Perceptual Option		
	T	sRGB IEC61966-2.1	Ì	ICC Conversion		RGB setting area
		🗹 Use Embedded profile	-	Perceptual	-	
		DS_SWOP2 Std 17 🗘	ſ	Pass(Identify as the same color)		
СМҮК		Use Embedded profile				
	Т	DS_SWOP2 Std 17 🗘		Pass(Identify as the same color)		CMYK setting area
		Use Embedded profile				
Grav		K-DS_SWOP2 Std 文		Delete profile		
		Use Embedded profile				
	T	K-DS_SWOP2 Std		Delete profile		Gray
		Use Embedded profile				
				CMYK/Gray that has not adhered the profile is passed.		
▼ Deta	ail se	tting				
				ICC Conversion		
LaD				Perceptual Option 🔻		
	T		ĺ	ICC Conversion		Lap seining area
			-	Perceptual Option 🔻		
						J

The selectable items in the input color setting vary depending on the setting of Use importing file information in the input processing.

- When the Use importing file information check box is not selected: You can change most items. Deselect the Use importing file information check box in the input processing if you want to change the input color setting.
- When the Use importing file information check box is selected: As the color conversion is executed using the input file setting, only limited items (RGB input color space / Use Embedded profile / Option / conversion intent) can be changed when the Use Target Profile check box is selected in the basic settings. Other items are left as default, regardless of the setting contents. When the Use Target Profile check box is not selected, the recipe conversion option is not available. However all other settings can be changed. Select the Use importing file information check box in the input processing if you want to use the input file setting.

Reference

Note

For more information about the settings for RGB, CMYK, Gray, and Lab, see "RGB settings", "CMYK settings", "Gray settings", and "Lab color space settings" in this chapter.

Note Color management In the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client, one default color conversion policy, which is applied to the entire job, is set for each job. The color conversion policy is the color conversion rule for the job. It is used for input color settings, intermediate target color settings, and output color settings. Note that the conversion policy can be changed using the Color Management option under Section Setting. The color conversion policy has the following two modes. • Offset simulation mode As the input data is converted to the target color space via the intermediate target color, the color space specified as the intermediate target color is first simulated and then the data is output to the final destination. This mode should be used, for example, when you print data that is output for offset printing using an output device specified in the output color setting and you want the color to be output as closely as possible to the output result of offset printing. Wide gamut mode In this mode, color data is not converted via the intermediate target color for color matching. Instead, it is directly converted into the color space appropriate for the output device to maintain the color gamut of the input data as far as possible. This is typically effective when RGB data, which has a wider color gamut compared to the normal offset printing, is used for printing.

• RGB settings

RGB settings allow you to set the input color space and conversion method that are applied to the image data and the text or illustration data created in RGB. Settings can be made for the image data, text data, and illustration data separately.



Input color space	Allows you to select an ICC profile that is set as the input color space from the pulldown list. For more information about the default ICC profiles, see "Input color space" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register an ICC profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".
Use Embedded profile	Select this check box to use the embedded ICC profile as the input color space if an ICC profile is embedded in an object, such as an image, text, or illustration, in the input file.
Conversion method	Allows you to select the conversion method of the input color space from the pulldown list. For image data, you can select the conversion method from ICC Conversion, Device Link Conversion, Recipe/ICC Conversion, and Recipe/Device Link. For text or illustration data, you can select the conversion method from ICC Conversion and Device Link Conversion. If you select ICC Conversion, the ICC conversion is executed using the specified conversion intent. If you select Device Link Conversion, the input color space is converted to the output color space using the device link profile. The output result data is regarded as a color space that is specified in the intermediate target profile. The Recipe/ICC Conversion and Recipe/Device Link options can be set for images only. When either option is set for an image, the recipe conversion is applied as a general rule. The ICC conversion or device link conversion is applied only to the images for which the recipe conversion option is not specified in Colorgenius LE/AC.
Setting	Allows you to make settings only when the Recipe/ICC Conversion or Recipe/Device Link option is selected in Conversion method. Click the Setting button to display the Select Image Conversion Recipe window.

	y beleet mage conversion neerpe
Recip	e settings for RGB image to RGB conversion
<u>المجر</u>	Default Recipe File: V4SC01Standard
	☐ ✓ Modify the image resolution according to the output resolution
	Quality Level: Standard
	Correct the Sharpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image
	Output Resolution: 360 dpi
į) [Pefault Recipe File will not be applied if there is one recipe assigned image or more.
	Cancel OK

	 File: The recipe files appropriate for RGB images are displayed in the pulldown list. You can select an RGB conversion recipe. For more information about the default recipes, see "Default recipe files" in Chapter 11. Modify the image resolution according to the output resolution: Select this check box to optimize the quality of images that are included in the input file. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11. Quality Level: Allows you to select a quality level from the pulldown list. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 10. Correct the Sharpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image: Select this check box to apply the optimal sharpness correction automatically. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11. Output Resolution: Allows you to set the output resolution of the image after the recipe conversion. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11.
Conversion intent	For image data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion or Recipe/ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select a conversion intent from the pulldown list. The conversion intent options include Default, Perceptual, Saturation, Relative Colorimetric, and Absolute Colorimetric. In general, each conversion intent is defined as follows. Default converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching. Perceptual converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors are replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors to be replaced, it rarely causes tone jumps. For this reason, this method is suitable for the conversion of photo images that include many out-of-gamut colors. Saturation converts colors as close as possible to their original colors accurately. This method is suitable for the conversion of data that requires bright color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use. Relative Colorimetric maintains a relative color gamut are compared and then the colors are outside the color gamut of the output profile, these colors are converted to the possible proximate colors in the output profile. Absolute Colorimetric leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut and chares the colors in the output profile color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.

Option	For image data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion or Recipe/ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select an option from the pulldown list. The option items include Keep paper color , Keep black 100% after conversion me, and Keep pure black color . can select multiple options. The icons for selected options are displayed as follows.		
	For more information about the options, see "Options for ICC color conversion" in Chapter 11. Note that the option item functions after the ICC conversion. Therefore it cannot be used for the images for which the recipe conversion is executed with Recipe/ICC Conversion selected.		
Device link profile	For image data, you can make settings only when the Device Link Conversion or Recipe/Device Link option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the Device Link Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Device Link Conversion method. Select a device link profile from the pulldown list. For more information about the default device link profiles, see "Device link profiles" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register a device link profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".		

• CMYK settings

CMYK settings allow you to set the input color space and conversion method that are applied to the image data and the text or illustration data created in CMYK. Settings can be made for the image data, text data, and illustration data separately.



Input color space	Allows you to select an ICC profile that is set as the input color space from the pulldown list. For more information about the default ICC profiles, see "Input color space" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register an ICC profile, see"12 Registering profiles and recipes".
Use Embedded profile	Select this check box to use the embedded ICC profile as the input color space if an ICC profile is embedded in an object, such as an image, text, or illustration, in the input file.

Conversion method	Allows you to select the conversion method of the input color space from the pulldown list. For image data, you can select the conversion method from Pass (Identify as the same color), ICC Conversion, Device Link Conversion, Recipe/Pass, Recipe/ICC Conversion, and Recipe/Device Link. For text or illustration data, you can select the conversion method from Pass (Identify as the same color), ICC Conversion, and Device Link Conversion. Select Pass (Identify as the same color) when the input color and the intermediate target color are recognized as an identical color. The data is not converted but treated as the intermediate target color If you select ICC Conversion, the ICC conversion is executed using the specified conversion intent. If you select Device Link Conversion, the input color space is converted to the output color space using the device link profile. The output result data is regarded as a color space that is specified in the intermediate target profile. The Recipe/Pass, Recipe/ICC Conversion, and Recipe/Device Link options can be set for images only. When any of these options is set for an image, the recipe conversion is applied as a general rule. The pass, ICC conversion, or device link conversion is applied only to the images for which the recipe conversion option is not specified in Colorgenius LE/AC.
Setting	Allows you to make settings only when the Recipe/Pass, Recipe/ICC Conversion or Recipe/Device Link option is selected in Conversion method. Click the Setting button to display the Select Image Conversion Recipe window. Select Image Conversion Recipe Recipe settings for RCB image to RCB conversion Recipe File: V4SC01Standard

	Quality Level:	Standard	•
	Correct the Shar	pness paran	neter automatically when enlarging the imag
	Output Resolution:	360	dpi
De	fault Recipe File will not	be applied i	f there is one recipe assigned image or more

• File:

The recipe files appropriate for CMYK images are displayed in the pulldown list. You can select a CMYK conversion recipe. For more information about the default recipes, see "Default recipe files" in Chapter 11.

- Modify the image resolution according to the output resolution: Select this check box to optimize the quality of images that are included in the input file. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11.
- Quality Level: Allows you to select a quality level from the pulldown list. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11. Correct the Sharpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image... Select this check box to apply the optimal sharpness correction automatically. For
 - more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11.
- Output Resolution:

Allows you to set the output resolution of the image after the recipe conversion. For more information, see "Image conversion setting" in Chapter 11.

S

Conversion intent	For image data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion or Recipe/ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select a conversion intent from the pulldown list. The conversion intent options include Default, Perceptual, Saturation, Relative Colorimetric, and Absolute Colorimetric. In general, each conversion intent is defined as follows. Default converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching. Perceptual converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors are replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors. Saturation converts colors as close as possible to their original colors using enhanced lightness (L value) to maintain saturation of colors rather than to reproduce the color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use. Relative Colorimetric maintains a relative color gamut of each color. The input profile color gamut and the output profile color gamut are compared and then the colors are outside the color gamut of the output profile, these colors are converted to the possible proximate colors in the output profile. Absolute Colorimetric leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut color is converted to a color that has the same color tone and is located on the outmost border of the color space. This method is useful when colors must be reproduced accurately. However, when the output profile color gamut is narrower than the input profile color gamut, the colors that are located outside the color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.
Option	For image data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion or Recipe/ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select an option from the pulldown list. The option items include Keep paper color , Keep black plate , Keep black 100% after conversion , Keep pure black color . You can select multiple options. The icons for selected options are displayed as follows.
	For more information about the options, see "Options for ICC color conversion" in Chapter 11. Note that the option item functions after the ICC conversion. Therefore it cannot be used for the images for which the recipe conversion is executed with

Recipe/ICC Conversion selected.
Device link profile	For image data, you can make settings only when the Device Link Conversion or Recipe/Device Link option is selected in Conversion method. For text or illustration data, you can make settings only when the Device Link Conversion option is selected in Conversion method.	
	Device Link Conversion Setting	
	Select a device link profile from the pulldown list. For more information about the default device link profiles, see "Device link profiles" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register a device link profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".	

• Gray settings

Gray settings allow you to set the input color space and conversion method that are applied to the image data and the text or illustration data created in Gray. Settings can be made for the image data, text data, and illustration data separately.



Input color space	Allows you to select an ICC profile that is set as the input color space from the pulldown list. For more information about the default ICC profiles, see "Input color space" in Chapter 11. Also, for information on how to register an ICC profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".
Use Embedded profile	Select this check box to use the embedded ICC profile as the input color space if an ICC profile is embedded in an object, such as an image, text, or illustration, in the input file.
Conversion method	Allows you to select the conversion method of the input color space from the pulldown list. You can select the conversion method from Delete Profile, ICC Conversion, and Device Link Conversion. If you select Delete Profile, the embedded ICC profile is deleted. The target colors are not converted. If you select ICC Conversion, the ICC conversion is executed using the specified conversion intent. If you select Device Link Conversion, the input color space is converted to the output color space using the device link profile. The output result data is regarded as a color space that is specified in the intermediate target profile.
Conversion intent	For image data, you can make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select a conversion intent from the pulldown list. The conversion intent options include Default, Perceptual, Saturation, Relative Colorimetric, and Absolute Colorimetric. In general, each conversion intent is defined as follows. Default converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching.

	maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors are replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors to be replaced, it rarely causes tone jumps. For this reason, this method is suitable for the conversion of photo images that include many out-of-gamut colors. Saturation converts colors as close as possible to their original colors using enhanced lightness (L value) to maintain saturation of colors rather than to reproduce the colors accurately. This method is suitable for the conversion of data that requires bright color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use. Relative Colorimetric maintains a relative color gamut of each color. The input profile color gamut and the output profile color gamut are compared and then the color conversion is performed according to the resulting difference ratios. When the colors are outside the colors in the output profile. Absolute Colorimetric leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut color is converted to a color that has the same color tone and is located on the outmost border of the color space. This method is useful when colors must be reproduced accurately. However, when the output profile color gamut is narrower than the input profile color gamut, the colors that are located outside the color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.	
Option	Allows you to make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion method. Select an option from the pulldown list. The option items include Keep paper color , Keep black 100% after conversion , Keep pure black color . You can select multiple options. The icons for selected options are displayed as follows.	
	For more information about the options, see "Options for ICC color conversion" in Chapter 11.	
Device link profile	Allows you to make settings only when the Device Link Conversion option is selected in Conversion method.	
	information on how to register a device link profile, see "12 Registering profiles and recipes".	
CMYK/Gray that has not adhered the profile is passed.	You can only make settings under the following conditions.When the Use importing file information check box is not selected in the input processing.	
	Select this check box to send the CMYK or Gray object data with no ICC profile	
	embedded to the output side without being converted with the specified conversion method.	
	This function is applied to all CMYK and Gray data in a batch.	

Perceptual converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is

• Lab color space settings

Clicking Detail setting on the left side of the Input Color Setting window displays the Lab setting fields. You can set the conversion method that is applied to the Lab color space for the image data and the text or illustration data.



Conversion method	Allows you to select the conversion method of the input color space from the pulldown list. You can select only ICC Conversion as a conversion method. If you select ICC Conversion, the ICC conversion is executed using the specified conversion intent. If no intent is specified, ICC conversion is made using perceptual matching.
Conversion intent	Select a conversion intent from the pulldown list. The conversion intent options include Default, Perceptual, Saturation, Relative Colorimetric, and Absolute Colorimetric. In general, each conversion intent is defined as follows. Default converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching. Perceptual converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors are replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors to be replaced, it rarely causes tone jumps. For this reason, this method is suitable for the conversion of photo images that include many out-of-gamut colors. Saturation converts colors as close as possible to their original colors using enhanced lightness (L value) to maintain saturation of colors rather than to reproduce the color saccurately. This method is suitable for the conversion of data that requires bright color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use. Relative Colorimetric maintains a relative color gamut are compared and then the color conversion is performed according to the evulut profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut colors in the output profile. Absolute Colorimetric leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut color is converted to a color that has the same color tone and is located on the output profile color gamut, the colors that are located outside the color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.
Option	Select an option from the pulldown list. The option items include Keep paper color and Keep black 100% after conversion 🚾. You can select multiple options.

The icons for selected options are displayed as follows.

-

For more information about the options, see "Options for ICC color conversion" in Chapter 11.

Section

Make settings for the section. More than one section can be set for one job. You can set finish conditions for a section and the setting information is applied to the ticket or imposition scheme for the output workflow.

Setting binding type between sections

Clicking no the upper section of the output workflow setting area opens the Total Binding Type Setting window. In the Total Binding Type Setting window, you can select whether to include the front cover and set the position between the sections (binding type).

otal Binding Type Setting	×
O Perfect Bound	
O Perfect Bound(wrapping c	over)
O Saddle Stitch	
OK Cano	el

Perfect Bound	Sets the perfect binding for binding between sections.
Perfect Bound (wrapping cover)	Sets the perfect binding (wrapping cover) for binding between sections.
Saddle Stitch	Sets the saddle stitching for binding between sections.

Note

The binding type between sections cannot be set for a section auto-switching job (job template).

Adding a section

Clicking A on the upper section of the output workflow setting area opens the Section Setting window, to which you can add the section. The Section setting window consists of three windows: Section Setting, Plate, and Set Macro Values. You can switch a window by selecting the setting item on the left.

Section Setting

Make the basic information settings in Section Setting.

0 0 0		[Cover] Basic Setting	
			Save Cancel
Section Setting	Section Name:	Cover	
‰ Set MacroValues	Section Type:	Normal ≑	
	Page Size:	A4 Vertical	Mixed Size
	Page Sequence:	Normal 😫	
	Number of Pages:	4	
	Binding Side:	Left	
	Binding Type:	Perfect Bound	

Section Name	Specify a section name.	
Section Type	 Allows you to select a section type from the pull-down list. Normal: An imposition scheme is created according to the page size and number of pages specified for the section. Auto Ganging: An imposition scheme is created using an auto ganging function. Section Layout: Signatures that are set for multiple sections are ganged. 	
Page Order	Allows you to select a pagination style from the pull-down list.Normal: Page order in an imposition scheme is serially numbered from 1.Free: Page order in an imposition scheme is discontinuous.	
Number of Pages	Allows you to specify the number of pages for the section.	
Page Size	Allows you to specify the finished page size.	
Mixed Size	Select this check box when the section contains different page sizes.	
Binding Side	Allows you to select a binding position. You can select from Right, Top, and Left.	
Binding Type	Allows you to select a binding type. You can select from Perfect, Perfect Bound (wrapping cover), and Saddle Stitch.	

Plate

Make settings for the separations to be used for printing of the section in Plate. You can also set the output order for the separations.

00	Section	
		Save Cancel
Section Setting	Plate Cyan Magenta	Add
Set MacroValues	Yellow ■ Black ■ Other Spot colors	Detail
		Delete

То Тор	Moves the selected separation to the top.
To Upper	Moves the selected separation one position up.
To Lower	Moves the selected separation one position down.
To Bottom	Moves the selected separation to the bottom.
Add	Allows you to add a separation.
Detail	Shows the simulated color value for the selected separation.
Delete	Deletes the selected separation from the separation list.

Set Macro Values

Set spine mark character strings and simple accessory character strings. These character strings are used for replacement of macro characters that are set in Spine Mark Editor as well as in Register Mark and Simple Accessory Editor.

00		[Cover] Basic Settin	ng
			Save Cancel
Section Setting Set MacroValues	Signature Numbe ⊤BackboneMark Stri %U:	r: 1	
	SimpleAccessory S	tring:	
	%+01:		
	%+02:		
	%+03:		
	%+04:		
	%+05:		
	%+06:		
	%+07: %+08-		
	%+08:	-	
	%+10:		

Backbone Mark String	Allows you to enter a character string to be output on the spine.	
Simple Accessory String	Allows you to enter a simple accessory character string to be output. If you do not enter anything, it is left blank.	

Editing a section

Clicking the section you wish to edit shows the Section Setting window. Edit the conditions as necessary, and then click the Save button.

Deleting a section

When you place the mouse cursor on a section, the Delete icon is displayed to the upper right. Clicking 😢 deletes the corresponding section.

Moving a section

You can reorder the sections by dragging and dropping the target section.

Output Workflow

You can register necessary settings, including imposition scheme, media, ticket, and color conversion settings, for purpose as output workflow. Up to 5 output workflows can be registered for one section and the output processing is executed using the output settings in order from the left in the setting area. To stop the processing, set Approval waiting or Stop between the output settings. When you have set Approval waiting, approving the processing will resume it using the next output setting. However, when you have set Stop, the processing can be resumed by issuing a ticket manually.



Adding an output workflow

Follow the steps below to add an output workflow.

Operation

1. Select the workflow type and output processing type.

Clicking the Add icon on the lower right of the section opens the New Output Workflow window. Select the workflow type and output processing type.

Next, perform the output-related setting. To create a new input setting, click the New button, and to import the output setting saved as template, click the Import button.

New Output Workflow	×
Workflow Type: Output	
	l
OutlinePDF-Advance 133.224.48.114	l
	l
	l
Import New Cancel)

2. Make the settings for the output.

When creation of a new output setting is selected, the following output setting window opens. Perform settings such as printing conditions, output settings, color conversion, and printing processing ticket. For more information, see Output setting window below.

000		Cover – Output
Printer Information Update)	Save Cancel
Output Color Setting 🛞	Printer Name:	133.224.48.114 🛟
Printing Conditions	Printer Model:	Pro C71105 JPN R-61A
Print Processing Ticket	Copies:	1
	Printing side:	Both sides (2 sided)
	Paper:	Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed]
	Operation of print JOB:	Print
	Store of Print job:	Store indefinitely Day: 0 Hour: 0 Minute: 0
	▼ Printer Color Setting	
	Color:	Color
	ICC profile for front side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss
		☑ Make the back side the same
	Rendering intent:	Perceptual
		Quality Priority
	Conversion option:	
	6	

3. Import the output settings.

When importing of the output settings is selected, the following import window for output settings opens. Select the output settings to import, and click the Import button.

00	Import Output Setting	
Output Setting Name:	POD_OutputSetting1	•
	Import Cancel	

4. Select or create an imposition scheme.

You can set an imposition scheme by clicking the imposition scheme icon. Click the Link final output button to use the imposition scheme that is the same as the one set for the output processing.

00	0	Imposition	
Type:	Normal	÷	Cancel
	Edit		
	Simple Edit		
	Import		
	Export		

Туре	Allows you to selec	t the type of impositio	n scheme to be set.		
	Normal	: Output is pe	: Output is performed with an imposition scheme set.		
	None	: Output is pe	erformed without an imposition scheme set.		
	Booking	: This option scheme is to	should be selected when an imposition b be set later.		
Edit	Allows you to creat	te a new imposition sc	heme or edit an existing imposition scheme.		
Simple Edit	Allows you to edit of The dialog box disp mposition Sheet Sheet Size: Width 455mm H Grain Direction: Horizontal Margin: Left Omm Right Om Layout Ref. Pt: Center Layout Ref. Pt: Center Layout Ref. Pt: Scenter Layout Ref. Pt	teight 322mm m Top Omm Bottom Omm in m	and accessory preset. ing on the process to use. When a file output is selected, Plate and Paper are not displayed.		
Import	Allows you to impo	rt an imposition templ	ate.		
Export	Saves the impositio	Saves the imposition scheme set in the workflow as an imposition scheme template.			
Auto Ganging	Starts the auto gan	ging wizard.			

Note

When using the fold catalog assignment function and auto ganging function, select Booking for Type and then save the setting.

Saving and reusing an output setting

The output settings created in the output workflow are saved as a template to be used for other output work flows. To save the created output settings as a template, click the is button that is displayed in the lower right when you place the mouse cursor on an output workflow box. To import the output settings from the template, click the is button displayed in the lower right. When the new output settings are imported, the details of the output settings that were edited previously will be deleted.



Importing an output workflow from other sections

You can import all the output workflows specified for other sections. You can import the output workflows from not only the sections in the job being edited, but from other jobs and the sections of the job templates. Note that all of the old settings will be deleted when the new output workflow is imported.

Operation

1. Click 👜 in the upper right of the section.

Import Output Workflow		×
 Section 	🔘 Job	🔵 Job Template
Original Section:	Cover	\$
	Import Cancel	

2. Select the original section for importing

The Import Output Workflow window is displayed. Select the original section for loading from the Original section pull-down list, and click the Import button.

When the original section for importing is in another job or template, select the job or job template using the radio button. After selecting the target job/job template from the Job/Job Template Name pull-down list, select the original section for importing.

Import Output Workflow		×
◯ Section	 Job 	🔵 Job Template
Job/Job Template Name:	NewJob2	\$
Original Section:	Section#1	*
6	Import Cancel	

3. The loaded output workflow is displayed in the output workflow window.

Editing an output workflow

You can change the output workflow setting by clicking an icon on the output workflow box. The functions of each icon button are shown below.

Output setting Imposition scheme Detailed information	Delete 1 → Group New Ticket(2) Save output setting Import output setting Import output setting		
Output setting	Opens the Output setting window and allows you to edit the output setting. For more information, see "Output setting window" below.		
Imposition scheme	Allows you to edit an imposition scheme or import an imposition template.		
Change output processing type	Changes the output processing type. The output workflow setting window opens next, as in the output workflow creation, so select the output processing type. Whe the output processing type is changed, the output settings are reset in accordance with the new output processing.		
Save output setting	Saves the current output settings as a template.		
Import output setting	Imports the output settings from the saved template. The current output settings will be deleted.		
Detailed information	Shows the output workflow settings in a popup window.		
Delete	Deletes the selected output workflow.		

Managing the output settings

2

You can save the output settings to be reused. You can import the saved output settings during the output workflow setting.

The Output Setting Manager window can be displayed from the Window menu of the main window. This window allows you to manage the operations such as creating a new output setting, editing, deleting, and copying the output setting.

	$\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$		Output Setting N	lanager		_	
Select setting	/ % 8 8				<u> </u>	Close	
item area	Name 🔺	Workflow	Last Update	Comments	Ticket Name		
	OutlinePDFAdv_1		May 2, 2016 7:39:28 PM	Factory-shipments	New Ticket		
	POD_Out1	🔬 📾	May 2, 2016 6:45:32 PM	Factory-shipments	New Ticket(2)		
	POD_Out2	🔬 📾	May 2, 2016 6:45:32 PM	Factory-shipments	New Ticket(2)		
							Setting area
						<u> </u>	
<i>•</i>		Allows you to selected outpu	edit an output set ut setting.	ting. Clicking tł	nis icon opens the	e window f	or editing the
5		Allows you to	copy an output se	etting. Clicking	this icon copies t	he selected	d output setting.

Allows you to delete an output setting. Clicking this icon deletes the selected output setting.

Allows you to change an output setting name. Clicking this icon opens the window for setting the name of the selected output setting.

For details of the output setting editing, see Output setting window below.

Output setting window

The configuration and settings of the output setting window differ depending on the processing type of the output target. This section describes the output setting window for each processing type. The configuration of the output setting window is shown below.

0 0 0	Cover - Output	
		Save Cancel
Output Color Setting 🔹	Processing Order: One by one in order of arrival	•
OutlinePDF-Advance 🛞		

Select the setting item in the Select setting item area on the left side of the window, and make settings for each item in the Setting area on the right side of the window.

File output

The output setting window for file output consists of four windows that are used for output settings, color conversion settings, processing order and output process ticket.

[Output Settings]

000		Cover – Output		
				Save Cancel
Output Color Setting 🛞	Processing Order:	One by one in order of a	rrival 🛟	
OutlinePDF-Advance 🛞				
Print Processing Ticket				

Plate	Shows the list of output separations. The output separations that have been set in the relevant section are listed automatically.
Process	Allows you to specify whether or not to output each separation.

[Color Conversion]

00	Body#1 - Output	
	Save Ca	ncel
Output Color Setting ※ Image: Printing Conditions Image: Processing Order Image: Print Processing Ticket Image: Print Processing Ticket	MediaDB Link: OFF + Dot Gain: None + Color Conversion Setting Conversion Method: Gray ICC Conversion + DS_apanColor2001type1 V2 Perceptual + TETE = Quality Priority	\$
	Conversion Area: All Area 🗘	

MediaDB Link	Select ON to use dot gain file, ICC profile and device link profile linked in the media database. For information on how to confirm the settings in the media database, see "Media Admin Tool Reference Manual". If you select OFF, you can specify a dot gain file or an ICC profile individually.
DotGain	Allows you to select a dot gain file when the media database is not linked. For more information about the default dot gain file, see "Media Admin Tool Readme". Also, for information on how to register an dot gain file, see "Media Admin Tool Reference Manual".
Gray	Select this check box to perform grayscale conversion.
Conversion Method	Allows you to select "ICC Conversion" or "Device Link" or "Doesn't Conversion" when the media database is not linked.
Profile	Allows you to make settings only when the media database is not linked and the ICC Conversion or Device Link option is selected in Conversion Method. Select a profile from the pulldown list. For more information about the default profile, see "Media Admin Tool Readme". Also, for information on how to register an profile, see "Media Admin Tool Reference Manual".
Conversion Intent	Allows you to make settings only when the ICC Conversion option is selected in Conversion Method. Select a conversion intent from the pulldown list. The conversion intent options include Default, Perceptual, Saturation, Relative Colorimetric, and Absolute Colorimetric. In general, each conversion intent is defined as follows. Default converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching. Perceptual converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors to be replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors to be replaced, it rarely causes tone jumps. For this reason, this method is suitable for the conversion of photo images that include many out-of-gamut colors.

	Saturation converts colors as close as possible to their original colors using enhanced lightness (L value) to maintain saturation of colors rather than to reproduce the colors accurately. This method is suitable for the conversion of data that requires bright color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use. Relative Colorimetric maintains a relative color gamut of each color. The input profile color gamut and the output profile color gamut are compared and then the color conversion is performed according to the resulting difference ratios. When the colors are outside the color gamut of the output profile, these colors are converted to the possible proximate colors in the output profile. Absolute Colorimetric leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut color is converted to a color that has the same color tone and is located on the outmost border of the color space. This method is useful when colors must be reproduced accurately. However, when the output profile color gamut is narrower than the input profile color gamut, the colors that are located outside the color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.
Option	Allows you to make settings only when the ICC Conversion or Device Link option is selected in Conversion Method. Select an option from the pulldown list. The option items include Keep paper color, Keep primary color, Keep black 100% after conversion, and Keep pure black color (You can select only Keep paper color, Keep black 100% after conversion when you select Device Link or conversion to gray.). You can select multiple options. For more information about the options, see "Options for ICC color conversion" in Chapter 12.
Quality Priority	This check box becomes effective during ICC profile conversion. Select this to perform processing with priority given to the accuracy of conversion using the ICC profile for output color. Note, however, the processing time is longer.
Conversion Area	Allows you to set the application range of color conversion. Select the application range, either All Area or Finished Area.

[Processing Order]

000	Cover - Output	
		Save Cancel
Output Color Setting (*) Processing Order OutlinePDF-Advance (*) Print Processing Ticket	Processing Order: One by one in order of arrival	

Processing Order

Select the processing order of signature/page from the pull-down list.

[Processing Ticket]

The ticket editing window opens. The necessary processing is automatically set, so normally no editing is required. The ticket is edited when you want to add a processing to the flow or change the detailed parameters.

		Cover – Output		
			Save	Cancel
Output Color Setting 🔹 🛞	<<<			Import
Processing Order	Process	Workflow		
OutlinePDF-Advance 🛞) OutlinePDF -Advance	OutlinePDF -Advance		
		Name: New Ticket		
		Created Date: May 2, 2016 7:51:34 PM		
		Last Update: May 2, 2016 7:51:34 PM		
		Priority: Normal		
		Comments: Factory-shipments initial value		

Import	Imports the saved output ticket. The ticket editing window is displayed.
Ticket editing area	Allows you to directly create and edit the ticket. For more information, see "Ticket Editing" in Chapter 7.

Operation using a job

This section describes operations for a job.

Registering files

Automatic page assignment setting

In the Register File window, the page assignment position can be specified using a page number or folio mark. You can select a page assignment method from the pull-down list at the upper right.

Page number

0 0		demo005-Register File		
Section Name:	All section - 2	8pages 🛟	Page 🛟	Register
Start	End	File	Start Pag	Cancel
1	16	/Volumes/KsFolder/dev/TestData/A4-32Pages-input.pdf		
				Add
				Delete
				Register and delete
C				
Continuation F	Page Assignmen	t		
Assignment St	ep: 1	Assignment Un-assign Page		

Section Name	Allows you to select a section to which the file is assigned. The page numbers are assigned within the selected section. If the number of pages exceeds the page range for the specified section, the extra pages are assigned to the next section. When you select All section, page numbers are assigned throughout the entire job.
Start	Allows you to specify the page number to start the page assignment.
End	Allows you to specify the page number to end the page assignment.
File	Allows you to specify the file to be registered.
Start Page	Allows you to specify the page in the registered file from which the page assignment starts. To start the page assignment from the first page, specify "1".
Continuation Page Assignment	When you register multiple files that all contain the same number of pages, specify the number of pages here. This makes page assignment settings for all files at the same time.

Folio mark	Σ.			
0 0		demo005-Register File		
Section Name:	All section - 2	8pages 🛟	Folio 🗘	Register
Head	Page Count	File	Start Pag	Cancel
Cover1	16	/Volumes/KsFolder/dev/TestData/A4-32Pages-input.pdf		
				Add
				Delete
				Register and delete
Continuation	Page Assignmen	•		
Continuation	rage Assignmen			
Assignment St	ep: 1	(Assignment) (Un-assign Page)		

Section Name	Allows you to select a section to which the file is assigned.			
Head	Shows the folio mark for the first page of the page assignment. The folio mark is searched from the input data and displayed.			
Page Count	Allows you to specify the number of pages for the page assignment. The folio marks are assigned throughout the specified number of pages beginning from the folio mark specified in Head.			
File	Allows you to specify the file to be registered.			
Continuation Page Assignment	Allows you to assign pages continuously.			

Operation 1. Click the Register File button in the shortcut area.

The main area switches to Registered File Management, and the Register File window is displayed.

2. Register a file to the Register File window.

You can register a file to the Register File window by dragging the file to the window or by clicking the Add button to select file from the File Select window.

00		demo005-Register File		
Section Name:	All section -	28pages	Page 🛟	Register
Start	End	File	Start Pag	Cancel
1	16	/Volumes/KsFolder/dev/TestData/A4-32Pages-input.pd	f	
				Add
				Delete
				Register and delete
Cantinuation				
-Continuation F	age Assignme	nt		
Assignment St	ep: 1	(Assignment) (Un-assign Page)		

3. Make the page assignment setting in the Register File window if automatic assignment has been set.

• If the main area is Registered File Management, you can also drag file icons to the main area to register them.

• You can also register multiple files by dragging them to the main area together.

Note

Input processing

Note

You can run input processing for the selected files. If you run input processing on files on which it has already been run, the previous processing results are temporarily lost. However, the content of the page assignment settings from the time of registration is preserved, so after re-input processing is finished, page assignment is run again automatically according to the settings at the time of registration.

If you run re-input processing on files on which page assignment has already been run, the following window is displayed.

The Un-assign Pages check box should be selected to discard the page assignment information for the corresponding PDF or cleared to preserve it when the page assignment is run.



Operation

1. Click the Input button in the shortcut area.

The main area switches to Registered File Management, and the Input Process Ticket window is displayed.

00			NewJob	(Section Auto-Switchin	ng:Invalid)				
🔩 Action Plan 🕨 🚺	Register File Þ 🧧	🕹 Input 🕨 🖳	Page Assign 🕨 i	👳 Output				🔲 🗔	
`` v x m m m		1 I Q ¥	୬ ୭ ⑦						
File	Status	Preflight	Color La	yer info. Page Cour	nt Page Size	PDF Origin	Offset Origin	Rotation Angle	Registered Da
🕨 🕵 File.pdf	Ready	success		16	209.90278mm	TrimBox	0mm, 0mm		May 2, 2016.
CMYK_Orange_P1.pdf	Ready	success	S 1	1	209.99981mm	TrimBox	0mm, 0mm		May 2, 2016.
(*******	*****	*****) 4 - 14
用 🖌 标 🗑 👘 👘							🗆 E	xecute continuo	usly
Job Ticket 🛛 🖉 Syste	em Ticket 🔳	History						nport layer info.	
Ticket Name 🔺	Workflow	Last Update	Comme	ents			C	Execut	e
Ticket 💋		May 6, 2016 2:21	1:3 sample_Con	nment					
							Te	mporarily Edit a	nd Execute)
							_		
								End)

2. Select the ticket to be issued from the Input Process Ticket window, select the files to be processed from the registered file list in the main area, and click the Execute button.

A confirmation window asking you to confirm the files to be processed is displayed.



3. Check the files to be processed, and click the OK button.

The input processing ticket is issued according to the selected settings. The progress of the ticket is displayed in the progress view area on the bottom right.

4. After you have finished issuing tickets, click the Close button to close the window.

Assigning pages

You can assign pages in a file to pages in an Activity Board.



1. Click the Page Assign button in the shortcut area.

The main area switches to Activity Board, and the area to select files and pages to assign is displayed at the bottom of the window.

You can assign pages in a file to pages in an imposition scheme.

NoteThe page data already assigned is preserved even after the imposition scheme is replaced with
another one.The preserved page data can be used again when the number of pages in the imposition scheme is
increased.



1. Click the Page Assign button in the shortcut area.

The settings for specifying the page range for the pages you want to assign is displayed at the bottom of the window.

[List display]

Page Range: 1	to 6		0	deg. 🛟	Rotate Page	Page Assign
File ▲ ParkersBox_Vol12_Ne ParkersBox_Vol12_Ne ParkersBox_Vol12_Ne ParkersBox_Vol12_Ne	Cold (12)	No. File Name 1 NewsBox 2 NewsBox 3 NewsBox 4 NewsBox 5 NewsBox 6 NewsBox	Status	Color Information	Page Size 214.84167mm x 296.68611 214.84167mm x 296.68611 214.84167mm x 296.68611 214.84167mm x 296.68611 214.84167mm x 296.68611 214.84167mm x 296.68611	Setting - Layout Origin Center - Input Data Auto Scaling OFF - Offset X: Omm Y: Omm

[Thumbnail display]

Page Range: 1 to 6	0 deg. Rotate Page	Page Assign
File Cold To NewsBox_Vol12_New To NewsBox_Vol12_New To NewsBox_Vol12_New To NewsBox_Vol12_New	1 	2 - Layout Origin Center - Input Data Auto Scaling OFF - OFF contect
	3 3 2 3 2 3 3 3	4 X: Omm Y: Omm Limm

Page Range	Allows you to enter a page range for the pages you want to assign.
	Switches between the list display and the thumbnail display for files in the Page Assign window.
11	Switches the thumbnail display. You can switch between small thumbnail display, large thumbnail display, and thumbnail with information display.

- 2. To rotate the file in advance, set the rotation angle to 0°, Right 90 deg., 180°, or Left 90° deg., and then click the Rotate Page button.
- **3.** To change the page assignment settings, click the Setting button. The Page Assign Setting window is displayed.
- 4. Make settings for Layout Origin, Spread and Offset, and then click the OK button.

00	Page Assign Setting	
Layout Origin:	Center	ОК
🗌 Input Data	Auto Scaling Datum Line: Automatic 🜩	Cancel
🗌 🗌 Spread –		
Apply t	to cover pages	
Origin:	Center 🗘	
Offset	X: 0 mm Y: 0 mm	1
onset		

Layout Origin	Allows you to select from Lower Left, Center and Upper Left for the layout origin.
Input Data Auto Scaling	Select this check box to assign pages so that the page size of the assignment file is enlarged or reduced to fit the page size of the assignment location. For the scaling condition, select Automatic, H, or V.
Spread	If you selected Center, Lower Left or Upper Left in Layout Origin, select this check box to set the spread conditions.
Offset	Allows you to set the amount of offset from the position specified in Layout Origin.

5. In the Page Assign window, select the file to be assigned and enter the range of pages in the Page Range text boxes.

If you want to assign files in batch, select the files, and if you want to assign each page individually, select the pages. You can select multiple pages at the same time.

6. Select the assignment locations for pages from Activity Board in the main area, and click the Assign button.

If you selected a file or multiple pages in the Page Assign window, the pages for the assignment location are assigned in order starting from the first page selected.

You can also assign pages by dragging files or pages from the Page Assign window to the assignment location pages in the main area.

7. After you have finished page assignment tasks, click the End button to close the Page Assign window.

Input Data Auto Scaling

This function enlarges or reduces the size of pages to be assigned based on the page size of the assignment file and the page size of the assignment location (imposition scheme). Automatic, H, or V can be selected as a reference position. The page size is enlarged or reduced depending on the reference position selected, as described below.

Datum Line: Automatic

Page size is enlarged or reduced so that no margin is left with respect to the page size of the auto assignment location.

Page size of assignment source (file)	Page size of assignment location (imposition scheme)	Assignment result
↑	Ŧ	
	↑	*

Datum Line: H

Page size is enlarged or reduced so that the width of the page to be assigned becomes the same as the page width of the assignment location. If this option is selected when the binding position is left or right, the spread page setting will be disabled.

Datum Line: V

Page size is enlarged or reduced so that the height of the page to be assigned becomes the same as the page height of the assignment location. If this option is selected when the binding position is top, the spread page setting will be disabled.

Note

Page assignment extending across sections

If you specify the page range and the page number exceeds the number of pages in the section to be assigned, the pages are assigned across sections.

Example



Setting blank pages

You can set blank pages to pages in an imposition scheme.

Operation 1. Switch the main area to Activity Board, and select the page for which to set a blank page.

2. Click 🐴 on the toolbar.

A blank page is set for the selected page in the imposition scheme.

Moving the assigned pages

You can select multiple, sequential pages and move them to another assignment destination.

Operation

lacksim 1. Select the target pages to move in the Activity Board and then click \blacksim on the toolbar.

2. In the Shift Pages window, specify the assignment destination or the amount to move the pages.



Adjusting page offsets

You can adjust the offset for selected pages in an imposition scheme.



on 1. Switch the main area to Activity Board or Show Layout, select the pages in an imposition scheme, and then click on the toolbar.
The Adjust Offert Dislam Recursion leaders and the second sec

The Adjust Offset Dia	og Box window is displayed	d.
	Adjust Offset - Portrait Top Bi	ind
Layout Origin: Center	BaseOffset:	
	X: -0.22577mm Y:	: 0mm
Selected page		
Page Range 7	to 7	Target: All
Adjust Value: X: 0 mm	Y: 0 mm	
		Cancel OK

Layout Origin	Shows the layout origin.
Offset	Shows the current offset values for the selected page. If you select more than one page, the offset values are displayed as described below. If the same offset values are assigned to all of the pages: Common page offset values are displayed. If the same offset values are not assigned to all of the pages: Offset values are displayed as "". Even if "" is displayed, the adjusted offset values that were input are reflected in the offset values for the pages.
Selected Page	Applies the values entered in Adjust Value for the selected pages.
Page Range	 Allows you to enter a range of pages for which to adjust the offset. In Target, you can set how you want the offset adjustment to be applied to the range of pages that you entered. See the following for more information. Yes to All: Applies the offset value to all of the pages in the specified range. Odd: Applies the offset value to all of the odd-numbered pages in the specified range. Even: Applies the offset value to all of the even-numbered pages in the specified range.
Adjust Value	Allows you to enter X and Y offset values.

Size Adjustment

You can adjust the size of the assignment pages with respect to the page in the selected imposition scheme.

Operation

1. Switch the main area to Activity Board or Show Layout, select the pages in an imposition

scheme, and then click \prod on the toolbar.

The Size Adjustment window is displayed.

	0	Size Adjustment	
💽 Se	elected page		
🔘 Pa	ige Range	1 to 1	
🖲 AI	uto Fit Datum Line	e: Automatic 🛟	
⊖ Sp	ecify Individually	H: 100 % × V	100 %
	Assigned Data Size		
	Assigned Data Size Original Size	H: 297.00009 mm	V: 215.00005 mm

Selected page	Applies the entered values to the selected page numbers.
Page Range	Allows you to enter a range of pages for which to adjust the size.
Auto Fit	Performs automatic adjustment for the specified pages.
	Automatic, H, or V can be selected as a reference position.
Specify Individually	 Allows you to set the enlargement/reduction ratio of an individual page size. When you enter "100", the page size is not enlarged or reduced. For pages that have already been enlarged or reduced, the existing setting is reset (scaling ratio is returned to 100%) and then the page is enlarged (reduced) by the specified ratio. H: Enter the enlargement/reduction ratio in the horizontal direction of the page. H: Enter the enlargement/reduction ratio in the vertical direction of the page.
Assigned Data Size	Shows the information about the page size of assignment source and the page size to which the enlargement/reduction ratio specified at Specify Individually has been applied.

Setting folio marks

You can set folio marks for output for selected pages in an imposition scheme.

.



1. <u>Swi</u>tch the main area to Layout Management, select the pages in an imposition scheme, and then click on the toolbar.

The Setup Folio Mark	window is displayed
😝 🔿 🔿 Set Folio Mar	rk – Cntents
Specified Range: 1	from 32
💽 Page Layout	
Prefix Character Strings:	
Suf. Strings:	
Start Number:	
Only Character Strings	
	Cancel OK

Specified Rang	Je	Allows you to select the page range for which to set folio marks.	
Page Layout		 Select this if you want to output the page numbers of individual pages as folio marks. Set Prefix Character Strings, Suf.Strings, or Start Number as necessary. Character Strings : Allows you to enter prefix characters. Suf.Strings : Allows you to enter suffix characters. Start Number : Allows you to enter a start number. Select this if you want to output the same folio marks on all of the pages. Set the character string to be output as folio marks.	
Only Character Strings			
Note Macros that can be set using a prefix character string, suffix character string, or character only. The following macros are available. %N.%n: Registered file name %P%p: Page number of the registered file		n be set using a prefix character string, suffix character string, or character string nacros are available. stered file name number of the registered file	

• %L,%l: Date and time of file registration

Proofreading OK'd

You can set proofreading for a page and each signature of the imposition for final output. When you set proofreading for pages, you cannot modify the pages. However, when you set proofreading for a signature, the pages on the signature are OK'd for proofreading. In addition, operations such as editing imposition schemes and changing section settings are prohibited.

Proofreading for page



Important You cannot set proofreading when the target page or signature is in the approval waiting or rejected status, or the PDF for the page selected in the Layout Management window is open.

Output processing

You can issue an output processing ticket for the selected signature (side).

It is also possible to perform output processing using a ticket that was executed before.

00	Job_0	5 (Section Auto-Switch	ning:Invalid)		
💱 Action Plan 🕨 🚺 F	Register File 🕨 🚭 Input 🕨 📱	🛛 Page Assign 🕨 🥸	Output	💷 💷	
🍵 🗸 💥 👀 🚱 🖻	🕸 🖏 🕸 🖾 📜 🔍 🥇	' 🏂 🅦 🕐			III # BQ
Section	No. A Section Name Signatu	re Sheet Side	Folio Page Size	File Name Status	Layout Origi
Section1 [1 Output]	1(1) Section1 1	1 Front	Section1 1 210mm x 2	NewsBox V	Center/Spread
▶ 1(1)	2(2) Section1 1	1 Back	Section1 2 210mm x 2	NewsBox V	Center/Spread
▶ 2(1)	3(3) Section1 1	1 Back	Section1 3 210mm x 2	NewsBox V	Center/Spread
► 3(1)	4(4) Section1 1	1 Front	Section1_4 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
► 4(1)	5(5) Section1 2	1 Front	Section1_5 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	6(6) Section1 2	1 Back	Section1_6 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	7(7) Section1 2	1 Back	Section1_7 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	8(8) Section1 2	1 Front	Section1_8 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	9(9) Section1 3	1 Front	Section1_9 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	10(10) Section1 3	1 Back	Section1 210mm x 2	NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	11(11) Section1 3	1 Back	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	12(12) Section1 3	1 Front	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	13(13) Section1 4	1 Front	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	14(14) Section1 4	1 Back	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	15(15) Section1 4	1 Back	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
	16(16) Section1 4	1 Front	Section1 210mm x 2	🔁 NewsBox_V	Center/Spread
۸. ¥	ſ				
Execute continuously	Output 'Not Assigned' Pages as Bla	nk Pages.			End
Workflow History Ou	Itput Setting Template				
Output Processing Order: Group Ticket Name: New Ticket 《 슬	Printer Name: 133.224.48.114 Copies: 1	MediaD8 Link: OFF DotCain: None Profile Name: Pro C7	'1005series R-60A Gloss	Re-Exec	and Execute

Workflow	Used to perform processing using the workflow specified for the selected signature.
History	Used to perform processing using the ticket issued for the output processing.
Output Setting Template	Used to perform processing using the output setting saved on the system.

Operation 1. Click the Output button in the shortcut area.

The main area switches to Layout Management, and the Output Process Ticket window is displayed. Change the output workflow for the signature to be output using the pull-down list at the top of the signature list, if necessary.

00	Job_05	(Section Auto-Switching:Invali	id)	
💱 Action Plan 🕨 🚺 F	Register File 🕨 🚭 Input 🕨 ৗ	Page Assign 🕨 👳 Output		····
🍵 🗸 💥 👀 🊱 🍽	🕸 🖏 🐃 🖾 📜 🔍 😜	🏂 🎽 🕜		III # 14.
Section	From From From From From From From From	nt	E	lack
 Section1 [1 Output] 	1 1		1 1	
$ 1(1) \qquad 30 $	1- T		1- T	
▶ 3(1) ₩6				
▶ 4(1) 融资	Section 1 4	New Section 1	New Edwards	3 (3) Norder Voll2, Norder, Voll2, Section1_3
Execute continuously	Output 'Not Assigned' Pages as Blan	k Pages.		K F
Output Processing Order: Group Ticket Name: New Ticket මම බ ක	Printer Name: 133.224.48.114 Copies: 1	MediaDB Link: OFF DotGain: None Profile Name: Pro C7100Sserie	25 R-60A Gloss	Re-Execute

2. When you do not change the output setting.

Select the signatures to be processed from the main area, and then click the Re-Execute button.

3. When you edit the output setting before output.

Select the signatures to be processed from the main area. Enable Use selected Output Workflow, and then click the Temporarily Edit and Execute button. Check the signatures to be processed, and click the OK button. The output setting window is displayed. After editing, click the Re-Execute button.

	Temp	porarily Edit and Execute
		Re-Execute Cancel
Output Color Setting 🛞	Printer Name:	133.224.48.114 🛟
Printing Conditions	Printer Model:	Pro C7110S JPN R-61A
Print Processing Ticket	Copies:	1
	Printing side:	Both sides (2 sided)
	Paper:	Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed]
	Operation of print JOB:	Print 🛟
	Store of Print job:	Store indefinitely Day: 0 Hour: 0 Minute: 0
	▼ Printer Color Setting	
	Color:	Color
	ICC profile for front side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss
		Make the back side the same
	Rendering intent:	Perceptual
		Quality Priority
	Conversion option:	
	() 4 +

4. When you output using history.

Select the History tab in the lower section in the main area. Select a history ticket for use from the window shown below, and then click the Temporarily Edit and Execute button.

The output setting window is displayed. After editing, click the Re-Execute button.

🗌 Execute continuously 🗌 Output 'Not Assigned' Pages as Blank Pages. 🗌 Display history of the selected surface 🗾 💽 🚓 🛛 End					
Workflow History	Output Setting Template				
Start Date 🔻	Process Target	Workflow Type	Workflow	Comments	(Temporarily Edit and Execute)
May 6, 2016 2:42:44 PM	Section1-1-Front(+1)	Output	🔬 📾	Factory-shipments init	
May 6, 2016 2:39:49 PM	Section1-1-Front(+1)	Output	🔬 📾	Factory-shipments init	
May 6, 2016 1:40:15 PM	Section1-1-Front(+7)	Output	🔬 📾	Factory-shipments init	
6					

Display history of the selected surface	Select this check box to display only the output history of the selected folds.
Start Date	Shows the date and time when the ticket was issued.
Process Target	Shows the sections and signatures that were processed using this ticket.
Workflow Type	Shows the workflow (layout) that was processed using this ticket.
Workflow	Shows the workflow.
Comments	Shows the comment.

5. When you output using output setting.

Select the Output Setting Template tab in the lower section in the main area. Select a history ticket for use from the window shown below, and then click the Temporarily Edit and Execute button. The output setting window is displayed. After editing click the Re-Execute button.

	Workflow History	Output Setting Template	L			
Γ	Name 🔺	Workflow	Last Update	Comments	Ticket Name	Temporarily Edit and Execute
L	OutlinePDFAdv_1		May 2, 2016 7:39:2	Factory-shipments	New Ticket	
L	POD_Out1	🚳 📾	May 2, 2016 6:45:3	Factory-shipments	New Ticket(2)	
L	POD_Out2	🙈 im	May 2, 2016 6:45:3	Factory-shipments	New Ticket(2)	
L						
L						
L						
L						
L						
L						
	(
L						

5. Imposition

This chapter describes the imposition scheme.

Managing imposition schemes

You can select imposition scheme templates. Click the Import button in the imposition setting window of the Action Plan window to display the Imposition Manager window.

Tool bo	r					
00		Imp	osition Manager			
Imposition L Imposition New Imposition	E. st on Name ▲	Binding Side Left	Binding Ty Perfect Bound	pe Last Update Jun 3, 2011 1:49	OK Cancel Help	Imposition scheme list
B ^a Witten).()		
Imposition Nar	ne 🔺 Bindii	ng Side Bin	ding Type	Replaced Date		History
) 4 >		

Toolbar	The following icons are displayed in the toolbar.			
	Allows you to create a new imposition scheme.			
	1	Allows you to edit an imposition scheme.		
	٩.	Copies an imposition scheme.		
		Deletes an imposition scheme.		
		Changes the name of an imposition scheme.		
Imposition list	Shov Im Tyf Bir Bir Las Ias Cc Pa Nu Pa Joç Pri Pri	vs the registered imposition scheme templates. position Name: Shows the imposition scheme name. be: Shows the type of imposition scheme. ading Side: Shows the binding position. ading Type: Shows the binding type st Update: Shows the date and time when the imposition scheme template was t updated. omments: Shows comments. ge Sequence: Shows the page sequence. umber of Pages: Shows the number of pages. ge Size: Shows the page size. g Side: Shows the page size. g Side: Shows the page size. nting Method: Shows the printing method. nting Style: Shows the printing style.		

Sheet Size: Shows the sheet size.		
 Shows the history of the imposition schemes that were set for the job in the past. Imposition Name: Shows the imposition scheme name. Type: Shows the type of imposition scheme. Binding Side: Shows the binding position. Binding Type: Shows the binding type. Replaced Date: Shows the date and time of imposition scheme processing. Section: Shows the section or sections that have been set. 		
Applies the selected imposition scheme to the section or sections and closes the Imposition Manager window.		
Closes the Imposition Manager window without applying the selected imposition scheme to the section or sections.		

Creating a new imposition scheme

You can create	a new imposition scheme template. Click 🖳 on the toolbar to display the Imposition Editor window.
Reference	For information about how to use the Imposition Editor window, see "Creating an editing imposition scheme templates".
Note	 When creating an imposition scheme from a job, the list is filtered depending on the settings for the section. When Mixed Size is not checked: When left binding is selected, the imposition scheme templates for left binding and right binding are displayed in the list. When right binding is selected, the imposition scheme templates for left binding and right binding are displayed in the list. When top binding is selected, the imposition scheme templates for top binding are displayed in the list.

Editing an imposition scheme

You can edit an imposition scheme template. Select the imposition scheme template from the imposition scheme list and click 🖋 on the toolbar to display the Imposition Editor window. Editing operations are the same as for creating a new imposition scheme.

Copying an imposition scheme

You can copy an imposition scheme template and register it. Select the imposition scheme template from the imposition list and click \blacksquare on the toolbar to display the Copy window. Enter a name in Copying Name and click the <OK> button to copy the imposition scheme using the name you specified.

00		Сору	
Do you want to o	opy?		
Copy Source:	"Imposition-001"		
Copying Name:	CopyOf Imposition-001		
			OK Cancel

Creating and Editing a imposition scheme

Operation procedure

You can create an imposition scheme and add signatures as easily as you use the wizard feature following the easy step-by-step setting instructions. Even after you complete the wizard, you can still change the setting easily, since you can see the each setting instruction in the wizard directly from the Imposition Edit window.



Note that the setting window varies depending on the section type (Normal, Section Layout, and Auto Ganging).

Follow the steps below to create an imposition scheme.



on 1. Create a new imposition scheme from the Imposition Manager window or the Action Plan window.

- 2. Select the type of imposition scheme.
- **3.** Use imposition scheme wizard and set the imposition scheme Basic Setting and the first signature setting.

You can create the imposition scheme with only wizard when the imposition scheme has one kind of print surface.

4. Check the imposition scheme created in Imposition Edit window. Add or edit the signature, change the setting for each page, or change the free page arrangement settings when necessary.

Follow the steps below to edit the existing imposition scheme.

Operation

1. Edit the imposition scheme from the Imposition Manager window or the Job property window.

2. Edit the imposition scheme to add/delete signature, change the setting of the signature or change the setting for each page in Imposition Edit window.

Imposition scheme wizard

If you create a new imposition scheme from the Imposition Manager window or the Job property window, the New Imposition Wizard window is displayed.

The new imposition wizard allows you to make basic settings that are applied to the entire imposition scheme, such as the number of pages and the page size. It also allows you to make print settings, layout settings, and accessory settings for the imposition scheme.

For Normal layout



Shortcut area

Display of the shortcut area for the Normal layout and Section layout are different. Shows icons that allow you to switch the setting window that is displayed in the main area. The bright icon shows the current setting window in main are, then you can check the progress of setting.

	Q	Basic setting:	Shows Basic settings window. For more information, see "Basic setting".		
		Print setting:	Shows Print settings window. For more information, see "Print settings layout".		
	No.	Layout:	Shows the layout editing window. For more information, see "Layout settings".		
		Accessory Setting:	Shows Accessory window. For more information, see "Accessory settings".		
Main area	Shows the setting window and preview.				
Next	Shows the next setting window in main area.				
Rev	Shows the previous setting window in main area.				
Apply	Current settings are applied to the imposition scheme.				
ОК	Create the imposition scheme with the current settings.				
Cancel	Quit creating the imposition scheme and go back the previous window.				

Save as defaults	Saves the settings as default wizard operation values from the next time the program starts up. Save as defaults allows you to save perfect bound and saddle-stitching settings separately. Note that the Basic setting options are the same for perfect bound and saddle-stitching.
Help	Shows the on-line manual.

New Auto Ganging wizard

A New Auto Ganging Wizard window is displayed by clicking the Auto Ganging button from the window by clicked in action plan window.

Even when the section is saved checking at the check box of Mixed Size in section tab, you can layout of auto ganging.



Shortcut area

Shows icons that allow you to switch the setting window that is displayed in the main area. The bright icon shows the current setting window in main are, then you can check the progress of setting.

	Ż	Basic setting:	Shows Basic settings window. For more information, see "Basic setting"		
		Print setting:	Shows Print settings window. For more information, see "Print settings layout".		
		Division Setting:	Shows the Division Setting window. For more information, see. "Division Setting window".		
	Ŵ	Layout Setting:	Shows the layout window for Auto Ganging. For more information, see "Layout settings".		
		Accessory Setting:	Shows Accessory window. For more information, see "Accessory settings".		
Main area	Shows the setting window and preview.				
Next	Shows the next setting window in main area.				
Rev	Shows the previous setting window in main area.				
Apply	Current settings are applied to the imposition scheme.				
ОК	Create the imposition scheme with the current settings.				
Cancel	Quit creating the imposition scheme and go back the previous window.				
-----------	---				
Help	Shows the on-line manual.				
Reference	For each setting window of the wizard, see their respective descriptions.				

	130
D ' U'	221
Basic settings	And the second

Set the basic settings of imposition scheme such as number of pages, page size, binding type. For Normal layout



For Section Layout

A O O New Auto Gangini	n Wizard		
😥 Basic 🕨 🥎 Print 🕨 🙅 Divide 🕨 💐 Layout 🕨 🌃 Accessory Setting		Nex Prex	 Shortcut area
Exit	E T H H M A Ano 2 E	Apply OK OK Cancel Help	Mainana
	Bin Image: Control of the second	_ fave as default _	— main drea

007		
😝 🔿 🔿 New Au	Ganging Wizard	
😥 Basic 🕨 🧼 Print 🕨 🎇 Layout 🕨 🎼 Accessory Sett	g Next S	hortcut area
Basic	🖆 - 🛅 M 🔤 🚱 🗣 🗛 Auto 💽 🖾 🦳 Prev	
Imposition Name: New Imposition	Front	
Comments:	ОК	
Execute Auto Ganging Process on divided area of paper		
	Cancel	
	Help	
		Main area
	Signature List Error / Warning Information Save as default	
	No. Fold catalog rint Circ	
	1	
	()) ()	

For Auto Ganging layout

Imposition Name	Allows you to enter a name for the imposition scheme to be created.
Comments	Allows you to enter comments regarding the imposition scheme. The comments entered here are displayed in the imposition information field of the Job Property window.
Execute Auto Ganging Process on divided area of paper	This is displayed only for the Auto Ganging layout. If you select this check box, the layout is divided and ganging is performed for each divided area.
Number of pages	Allows you to enter the total number of pages for the section. This is displayed only Normal Layout is selected.
Page Sequence	Allows you to select the page order. Normal: Sets the serial page order in an imposition scheme. Free: Allows you to set the page order freely. Page Sequence is not displayed for the Auto Ganging layout.
Page Size	Allows you to select a size from the pull-down list. This is displayed only when Normal is selected.
Mixed Size	If you select this check box, the Page Size pull-down list will be invalid. Use this check box to lay out signatures for different page sizes. The Mixed Size check box is not displayed when Auto Ganging is selected
Binding Side	Allows you to select a binding position from the pull-down list. You can select Left, Right or Top, for the binding position. This is displayed only Normal Layout is selected. Binding Type is not displayed when Auto Ganging is selected.
Binding Type	Allows you to select a binding type from the pull-down list. You can select, Perfect Bound, Perfect Bound (wrapping cover) or Saddle Stitch for the binding type. This is displayed only when Normal is selected. Jog Side is not displayed when Auto Ganging is selected.
Jog Side	Allows you to select a Jog side from the pull-down list. For the Jog Side, you can select Head or Foot when the binding position is Left or Right, and Left or Right when the binding position is Top. This is displayed only Normal is selected.

Creep setting

Select the Creep setting check box to run creep processing to compensate for the thickness of the paper when the signatures are bound.

If you fill in each creep value text box, the value entered is reflected in the preview.



 Settina Bind Side Only: Runs creep processing in the spine/face direction. Bind Side And Jog Edge: Runs creep processing in both the spine/face direction and jog side direction. Creep processing in the jog side direction is effective only when Paper Thickness Automatically is selected for Creep Amount. Direction: Allows you to select a direction from the pull-down list. You can select Spine or Face for the direction. Creep Amount Select Paper Thickness Automatically or Specify Value. When Paper Thickness Automatically is selected, the values for Initial creep and Total distance are automatically calculated from the paper thickness. Initial creep: Shows the position to which the pages in that signature are shifted, including the amount of shift from the first signature (outside). • Initial position: Allows you to set a value for adjusting the offset from the start position with respect to the initial creep. Total distance: Allows you to set a value for the amount of shift up to the last signature (inside) from the first signature (outside) with a start position. Method Select Shift Position or Size Magnification. When you set a scaling percentage or correct page positioning, jaggies will be reduced in the images laid out using both the left and right sides of the spread page. This is displayed only when Normal is selected. Use Tumble pages and Both Select Set tumble pages and both side front pages check box to create both side side front pages setting front pages setting. Divide page: Allows you to specify a divide position (top page of the second half to be divided). • Reverse the page order since divide page: Allows you to reverse the order of pages from the divide page to the end page. If you select this check box, the preview is displayed as shown below. • Tumble pages since divide page: Allows you to tumble pages from the divide page to the end page

If you select this check box, the preview is displayed as shown below.



This is displayed only when Normal is selected.

Print setting 🔌

Set the print setting such as plate size, sheet size, printing style.

Rew In	nposition Wi	zard				
👰 Basic 🕨 🥎 Print 🕨 🖤 Layout 🕨 🀺 Accessory Setting 🗸						Next
Print	¦ ⊡•	ii 🖬	H	🖑 🗣 🗣	Auto	Prev
Sheet Name: Sheet_1 Print		0	200 400	600	800	Арріу ОК
Printing Method: POD		<u>.</u>				
Printing Style: O 🔲 🞯 🖵 O 🧊 Single Side Turn Tumble	Front	400				Help
Sheet		50				
Size: Vertical O Horizontal		0				
Width: 939 mm Height: 636 mm		1				
Gripper: 5 mm Grain Direction: 😧 🕅 🔿 <table-cell></table-cell>		0	o 200 400.			
Layout Ref. Pt: Allocate Reference: Finished I Finished+Margin Layout Origin: BottomCenter I Offset: X: 0 mm Y: 10 mm	Back	1200				
FoldLayoutArea						
► Fold Layout Area Bleed(s): [mm] 3, 3, 3, 3		-				Save as default
▶ Margin(s): [mm] 20, 20, 20, 20			= 1/1	►		Save as default
	Error / V	Warning Informatio	n			

Print

Printing Method	Allows you to select the printing method from the two options in the pull-down list (POD, and Do not specify a device). The setting items vary depending on the selected printing method. The Do not specify a device option cannot be set for Section Layout. When the imposition scheme has been created from a job/job template, the printing method is fixed in accordance with the target device, and it is not changed.
Printing Style	When you select the POD option from the printing method pull-down list, you can select Single Side, Turn, or Tumble. When you select the Do not specify a device option, you can select Single Side or Both Side. When the imposition scheme has been created from a job/job template, the options are automatically filtered in accordance with the device

Media				
Sheet	 Set for a sheet. You can select the registered sheet information from the Sheet Information pull-down menu. Size: Allows you to select the preset size from the pull-down list. Select Vertical or Horizontal using the button. Width: Set the width of the sheet. Height: Set the height of the sheet. Gripper Width: Set the gripper width. Sheet Grain Direction: Allows you to select a sheet grain direction, Vertical or Horizontal. When the imposition scheme has been created from a job, the items displayed and items for which the inputs are restricted are automatically switched for the target device accordingly. 			
	Click this button to display the Sheet Information window. Sheet Information Media Name: Width: 339 mm Width: 339 mm Sheet Grain Direction: Image:			
	information. The sheet information created here is added as an option in the pulldown list.			
Fold Layout Area Bleed(s)	Allows you to set the width of the bleed for the fold layout area. You can make separate bleed settings in Left, Right, Top, and Bottom. The bleed value set here is added as an option in the pull-down list.			
Margin(s)	Allows you to set the prepress margins. You can make separate prepress margin settings in Left, Right, Top, and Bottom. The prepress margin set here is added as an option in the pull-down list. The area set here will be used as an output area when outputting on the film.			
Layout Ref.Pt				
Allocate Reference	Allows you to set the layout origin for printing. Allows you to select from Finished, Finished+PageMargin for the layout origin. This is not displayed if Do not specify a device is selected for Printing Method.			
Layout Origin	You can select Center, Bottom Center, Upper Left, or Lower Left in the pull-down list. Note that Upper Left and Lower Left can be selected only when the Section Layout imposition scheme is created. This is not displayed if Do not specify a device is selected for Printing Method.			
Offset	Allows you to set the offset value from Sheet Layout Base Point. This is not displayed if Do not specify a device is selected for Printing Method.			

Note

If you change the layout origin after saving the imposition scheme, click 🔒 to release the lock. After the change, all folds are relocated according to the new Sheet Layout Base Point.

Division Setting window

The division setting is performed only when the Execute Auto Ganging Process on divided area of paper check box is selected. In this window, you can make settings for dividing the paper into specific pieces and performing ganging of each divided area.

$\Theta \cap \Theta$			New Auto Gangin	ng W	lizard			
👰 Bas	ic 🕨 蘝 Pr	int 🕨 💇 Divide 🕨 🌺 Layout 🕨 🌉	Accessory Setting					Next
		Divide		\$	H • E	🖑 🔍 🔍 🗚	uto 💽 🚼	Prev
						Front		Apply
Divide Li	ne:				0	100 200 300	400	
No. Di	rection Origin	al Point Start Position End Position	Length from Original F					UN
2 Hor	rizontal Center	X:225mm, Y:0mm X:225mm, Y:330mm X:0mm, Y:165mm X:225mm, Y:165mm	0mm		8			
					-			Cancel
					-	1		
)			<u>8</u> -			Help
Divide A	rea:		V		E.			
No	. Name	Area	μ.		200			
✓ 1 2	Block-1 Block-2	X:0mm Y:165mm W:225mm H:165mm X:0mm Y:0mm W:225mm H:165mm			2			
3	Block-3	X:225mm Y:0mm W:225mm H:330mm			8			
					1	4		
					<u>. </u>			
					1			
					-100			
					1			
				ſ	Signature List	Error / Warning Information		Save as default
				l	No.	Fold catalog rint (Circulatio 🕫	
					1		_	



Divide Area	Shows the int	ormation about the areas divided by the divide line.
	I	Sets the selected area as a reference area. Ganging is performed in order from the reference area.
		Allows you to change the divide area name.

Layout settings 🚳

The layout pane is used to set up an imposition layout.

It is also possible to create layouts of the pages with different sizes or different orientations.

- Important The pane does not support the arrangement of multiple impositions, such as stickers, or impositions used for paper packages.
 - The pane also does not support the arrangement of any signature with angles other than 0, 90, 180, and 270 degrees.

For Normal Layout

Note

Click the Layout button to display the list of the fold catalogs.

Drag and drop a page cell in the work area to specify the cell arrangement. This filters the fold catalogs and lists only the available ones on the left. Double-click a fold catalog from the list to open the corresponding signature in the work area.

The signature is properly rotated in the preview area in accordance with the grain direction.

It is also possible to open a signature in the work area by dragging the selected fold catalog directly from the list.

	_	_		New Impo	sition Wi	zard	_	_		
😥 Basic 🕨	💇 Print 🕨	🥸 Layout 🕨	Accessory Setting	-						Next
Add Fold M	🕂 🧳	ø 🔉	Flip Step & Repea	t Gap Fold	No. Pa	ge Setting Fold I	📔 ា Line Delete Undo	Gedo Free M	lode	Prev
ouble click the fe	ld catalog of the	fold catalog list afte	er dragging on the work	area and select	ing the a	rrangement area o	f the fold.			Apply
		Layout		× 1	×	🛅 🎮 🔣	k 🖑 🔍 q	Auto 💌		OK
age Size: 🛛 🗛 V	ertical	\$	🖉 Pag	e Setting			Front			
age Laugut Direc	tion: Vortical								C	Cancel
age Layout Direc	uon. verticai	•								
Clipping the	overlap area of fol	ds							C	Help
how: the Filter	ing 😜 Horize	ontal: 4 🗘 V	ertical: 2	8						
Fold Catalog	List									
Fold Catalog Na	me 🔺 🖓 age Numbe	er Utal Page Num		P						
F16-6	4 x 2	16			E 1					
F16-7	4 x 2	16								
F16-8	4 x 2	16								
F10-13	2 X 4	16								
🗹 The first page	is allocated on th	ne front					4x2			
Setting Fold I	ine									
									E	Save as defau
						1	< 1/1 ► 1		-	

Page Size	Allows you to select a size from the pull-down list.Horizontal: Allows you to set the page width.Vertical: Allows you to set the page height.
	Page Setting Click this button to display the page setting window. Set the page margin and bleed values in this window as necessary.
Clipping the overlap area of folds	 Allows you to clip the bleeds and page margins when signatures are arranged with their bleeds and page margins overlapped. When this check box is selected: Clips the page margins. When this check box is deselected: Does not clip the page margins. When this check box is deselected: Does not clip the page margins. Pages arranged with a 0 mm gap between them
	Use this check box when you create a step and repeat imposition for single cut.
Show	 Allows you to select the filtering condition for the signature list from the pull-down list. All: The fold catalogs in the list are not filtered and all normal section signatures are displayed. the History: Shows the history of fold catalogs that have been used. the Filtering: Shows a list of fold catalogs with the number of page arrangements specified in Horizontal and Vertical.
Fold Catalog List	Shows the list of the fold catalog.
The first page is allocated on the front	Select this check box to lay out the surface containing the first page as the front side.

Fold Line	Positions the signature by setting all the spine and face settings of the signature to		
	"0".		

Gap Setting	Allows you to select a setting method for the gap from the pull-down list. The gap
	setting options are Width and Center Distance. The gap setting options are Width
	and Center Distance. The gap setting is available only when the automatic layout
	mode is selected.

Fold Catalog Manager

Allows you to manage Fold Catalog, such as listing the existing catalogs, creating, editing, coping, deleting. There are three kinds (JDF defined, Built-in, Custom) of Fold Catalog. They are shown separately in the list. Fold Catalog Editor is started up to create new one and edit the existing one.

● ○ ●		Fold Catalog Manag	ler		
				- 🔍	Close
CIP4 defined					
Fold Catalog Name A	Fold Type	Fold Catalog Arrays	Total Page Number		Help
F2-1	Commonness	1,1	2	Au	
F4-1	Commonness	2,1	4	Au	(Fold Catalog)
F4-2	Commonness	2,1	4	Au	
F6-1	Commonness	3,1	6	Au	
F6-2	Commonness	3,1	6	Au	
F6-4	Commonness	3,1	6	Au 🔺	
_F6_5	Commonness	3.1	6	Δu Ψ	
		~		24 1	
Built-in					
Fold Catalog Name	Fold Type	Fold Catalog Arrays	Total Page Number		
DummyBook(8up to	Commonness	2,1	16	Au	
DummyBook(16up t	Commonness	2,1	32	Au	
DummyBook(24up t	Commonness	2,1	48	Au	
DummyBook(32up t	Commonness	2,1	64	Au	
F24_6x2_withSlit-1	Commonness	6,2	24	Au 🔺	
F24_6x2_withSlit-2	Commonness	6,2	24	Au 🔻	
(
A ▼ A Custom		*			
Fold Catalog Name	Fold Type	Fold Catalog Arrays	Total Page Number		
ComeAndGo Case1	Commonness	4.2	16	Jul 4.	
ComeAndGo TF213 1	Commonness	4.2	16	Jul 4.	
ComeAndGo TF213 2	Commonness	4.2	16	Jul 4.	
CopyOf ComeAndG	Commonness	4.2	16	Jul 4.	
6					
<u>L</u>				24	

Tool Bar	The following icons are displayed in the toolbar.			
	Ξ.	Starts Fold Catalog Editor, and allows you to create a new fold catalog. For more information, see "Fold Catalog Editor".		
	۶	Allows you to edit a fold catalog.		
	9	Deletes a fold catalog.		
	4	Copies a fold catalog. The fold catalogs in the JDF defined and Built-in lists are copied into the Custom list.		
	₽.	Allows you to change the name of a fold catalog.		
Fold catalog view	 Shows JDF-defined, Built-in and Custom (user-created) fold catalog. JDF-defined and build-in catalog can not be edited and deleted Fold Catalog Name: Shows the fold catalog name. Fold Type: Shows the fold catalog type. There are three kinds (Sheet fed and Web, Sheet fed, Web) of Fold Catalog. Page Number Up: Shows Page Number Up. Total page numbers: Show the total page numbers including both front and back. Modified date: Shows modified date. 			
	• Con	nment: Allows you to change the name of a fold catalog.		
Close	Close Fold Catalog Manager Window.			
Help	Shows the on-line manual.			
Fold Catalog	Shows stando	vs a description of the fold catalogs defined by CIP4 as well those included as lard.		

Editing layouts

You can edit layouts using the icons on the toolbar for the layout display area in the layout setting window.



Add Fold	Switches to the mode that arranges the signature. If you select a signature in the list and then drag and drop the signature, the signature is arranged.				
	Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + D Macintosh : [Control] + D				
∰ Move	Moves the selected signature. A signature can be moved by dragging it to a specific location or by entering the position values (coordinates) via the modeless dialog box.				
	Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + M Macintosh : [Control] + M				
C Turn Left	Rotates the selected signature 90 degrees counterclockwise. If you click this icon four times, the rotation angle returns to the original.				
	Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + L Macintosh : [Control] + L				
@ Inversion	Rotates the selected signature 180 degrees.				
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + T Macintosh : [Control] + T				
Turn Right	Rotates the selected signature 90 degrees clockwise. If you click this icon four times, the rotation angle returns to the original.				
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + R Macintosh : [Control] + R				
Flip	Switches front and back of the selected signature.				
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + F Macintosh : [Control] + F				

Repeat	Copies the selected signature. When arranging the signature between sections, simply copy it in position. When arranging a fold catalog, you can copy it and set the page number.					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + S Macintosh : [Control] + S					
₩ Gap	Allows you to set the gap between the selected signatures.					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + G Macintosh : [Control] + G					
Fold No.	Allows you to change the signature number of the selected signature.					
🔲 Fold Line	Allows you to set "0" for all the spin and face settings of the selected signature.					
Page	Allows you to create page settings for the selected signature. When arranging a signature between sections, you can set PageMargin & Bleed(s), Page Margin(s), Milling width, and Over fold. When arranging a fold catalog, you can set Page Size, PageMargin & Bleed(s), Page Margin(s), Milling width, and Over fold.					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + P Macintosh : [Control] + P					
D elete	Deletes the selected signature from the layout display area.					
	• Shortcut Delete					
า Undo	Undoes the edits.					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + Z Macintosh : [Control] + Z					
U Redo	Redoes the edits (Undo).					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + Y Macintosh : [Control] + Y					
0	Switches the mode. When auto mode is ON, the button is displayed. When auto mode is OFF, the button is displayed. Clicking this button does not adjust the layout. Positioning is adjusted automatically when this button is ON. • Automatic positioning is not executed while the button is OFF.					
	• Shortcut Windows : [Ctrl] + W Macintosh : [Control] + W					

Work Area For Normal layout



Signature preview area	Shows a preview of the signature laid out based on the fold catalog. You can perform the following operations in the signature preview area.			
Preview selection	Switches the p	preview mode.		
		The preview window is split into left and right panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.		
		The preview window is split into top and bottom panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.		
		The preview window shows the front side only.		
	-	The preview window shows the back side only.		
Preview display operation		You can select to display or hide the rulers in the preview area by clicking it.		
	4 - +	You can select to display or hide the Dimension in the preview area by clicking it.		
	. 18	You can select to display or hide the page cells in the preview area by clicking it.		
		The distance between two points that are clicked using a mouse is displayed in the preview area.		
	ħ.	Allows you to set the page dragged with the mouse as the page for which to make property settings.		
	G	Updates the display area created by dragging the mouse.		
	€,	Redisplays the current display at 110%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.		

 _	
e,	Redisplays the current display at 90%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.
Auto 🔽	Click the pull-down list to select a display magnification for the signature preview area from the displayed list.
* *	Automatically adjusts the display magnification so the preview can fit in the window.

Layout mode

When the automatic layout mode is selected, a finished layout of all signatures or a virtual bounding rectangle of the signature layout including page margins is automatically aligned to the offset position from the layout origin. For example, when Bottom Center is selected for Allocate Reference under Layout Origin in the Print setting window, if a signature is added as shown on the left below, the bottom center of the virtual bounding rectangle is automatically aligned to the offset position from the Bottom Center layout origin as shown on the right below.



Snapping

When a signature is inserted or moved, it is automatically aligned to the signatures that have already been positioned. The signature is snapped to the reference lines as follows.

• When you drag the mouse while holding down the Ctrl key:

The lines that run along each side (top, bottom, left, right), each corner, and each center of the finished signature layout



The blue dotted lines represent the reference lines for snapping

• When you drag the mouse:

The lines that run along each side (top, bottom, left, right), each corner, and each center of the signature layout including page margins



The blue dotted lines represent the reference lines for snapping

Ruler tool

The distance between two points that are clicked using a mouse is displayed in the preview area. The layout of the dimension display can be printed. It is displayed in all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).

• Click the measurement start point, and then move the mouse to the end point. A blue arrow is displayed until the end point is set. Normally, the start and end points snap to the signature and accessory that are arranged. Clicking the end point displays the measurement section and its distance.



Important

The measured dimension display is deleted when the tool is switched to another tool such as the enlarged display tool.

• In the measurement mode, the distance between two points can be measured sequentially.

- By using the following keys, the measurement point can be deleted or the snap to position can be switched.
 - Esc + right-click: Cancels the start point that is being measured.
 - Ctrl + mouse movement: Snaps to the finish frame of the signature.
 - Shift + mouse movement: The snap to point moves laterally and vertically only.
 - Alt + mouse movement: Snaps to the reference points (9 points) of the signature and accessory.

Auto Ganging layout window 👾

Note

Make settings for the automatic layout. In the Ganging layout window, a simple layout rule can be set for leaves, such as fliers, whose sizes and numbers of copies are not uniform. With the ganging layout, it is possible to create an imposition automatically based on the sheet type, number of sheets, or cutting of sheets.

It is also possible to divide the area for ganging, change the list of signatures to be positioned on the layout and the layout rule, and position the signatures while checking the layout result in the window.



Fold List

Shows a list of signatures to be positioned in the layout.

When the contents have already been input, all input pages are listed.

Import	Allows you to import the list of signatures from a CSV file. Clicking this button displays the File Select window, and imports the selected CSV file as a list of signatures.
+	Click this button to show the new layout window allowing you to add new signatures to be positioned in the layout.
494 J	Allows you to select the divide area to which the selected signature is to be positioned.
ð	Select a signature in the layout from the list and click this button to edit the selected signature.
T	Select a signature in the layout from the list and click this button to delete the selected signature from the list.
0	Shows the information about signatures positioned in the layout.

	Pages (Folds) arrangement according to grain direction	Positions signatures in accordance with the grain direction.
	Current Grain Direction	Show the grain direction using icons.
	Arrangement Style	Allows you to select Optimum Arrangement, Same Page (Fold) Arrangement Individually, Same Page (Fold) Arrangement Horizontally, or Same Page (Fold) Arrangement Vertically.
	Gap Mode	Allows you to select the gap between signatures in the layout from the pull-down list.
	Layer	Allows you to select Finished or Finished + Margin for the layout standard. When selecting Finished + Margin, set the margin sizes.
	Division Arrangement	Allows you to set the number into which a signature is divided for layout.
mation	Shows the informatic When ganging is pe displayed.	on set for the signatures or pages to be positioned in the layout. orformed using input data, a thumbnail of the input data is
1	mation	Pages (Folds) arrangement according to grain direction Current Grain Direction Arrangement Style Gap Mode Layer Division Arrangement mation Shows the informatio When ganging is per

changed by arranging the page order in the file management window in advance.

Work Area			
Signature preview area	Shows a preview of the signature laid out based on the fold catalog. You can perform the following operations in the signature preview area.		
Preview selection	Switches the prev	view mode.	
		The preview window is split into left and right panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.	
		The preview window is split into top and bottom panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.	
	ä	The preview window shows the front side only.	
	-	The preview window shows the back side only.	
Preview display operation		You can select to display or hide the rulers in the preview area by clicking it.	
	₩	You can select to display or hide the Dimension in the preview area by clicking it.	
	C	Updates the display area created by dragging the mouse.	
	⊕,	Redisplays the current display at 110%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.	
	e ,	Redisplays the current display at 90%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.	
	Auto 💌	Click the pull-down list to select a display magnification for the signature preview area from the displayed list.	
	5 × 2 5	Automatically adjusts the display magnification so the preview can fit in the window.	

Add Fold

When you select Ganging Fold List in the new Auto Ganging wizard window and then click the 🥒 or 📑 icon, the signature editing window is displayed.

Click the Repeat Registration button, the signature will be a added to the list of signatures continuously.

In the Add Fold window, you can select the Page, Fold catalog, or Print tab and make settings in each tab window. The signatures edited in the Add Fold window will be added to the list of signatures.

Page setting

Edit Fold (N	0.1)				×
		Cor	ntinual Edit	ОК	Cancel
Page	Fold catalog	Print			
Page Size:	A7 Vertical		\$		
Width:	74 mm	Hei	ght: 105 mm		
▼ PageMar	rgin & Bleed(s):				
Page N	Margin(s)[mm] 3, 3	3, 3, 3 / Ble	ed(s)[mm] 3, 3,	3, 3 🗘	
Page Marg	gin(s)				
Spine:	3 mm	Face:	3 mm		
Top:	3 mm	Bottom:	3 mm		
Bleed(s)					
Spine:	3 mm	Face:	3 mm		
Top:	3 mm	Bottom:	3 mm		
▼ Other:					
Milling wi	dth: 0 mm				
Over fold:	Position	Тор	\$	Width: 0 n	nm
Folio Num	ber: (Ganging Fo	ld List No.)	- + (pag	e order in th	e fold)

Page Size	Allows you to select a page size from the pull-down list. The selected page size values are displayed in Width and Height. For a custom size, enter values in Width and Height.
Page Margin & Bleed (s)	 History: Shows a pull-down list of the page margin and bleed values that have already been used. Bleed(s): Allows you to set bleed values. You can make separate bleed settings in Spine, Face, Top, and Bottom. Page Margin(s): Allows you to set page margin values. You can make separate page margin settings in Spine, Face, Top, and Bottom.
Other	 Milling width: Allows you to specify the milling width. The milling width is the margin. Over fold: Allows you to select a position from the pull-down list and enter a width.
Folio Number	Allows you to enter a prefix value for folio marks. If the value is not specified, the number is automatically assigned using the number shown in the list of signatures to be positioned in the layout.

Fold catalog

Edit Fold (No.1)			×
	Continual Edit	OK Ca	ncel
Page Fold catalog	Print		
Show: the Filtering ᅌ	Horizontal: 1	Vertical: 1	R
Fold Catalog List			
Page Number Utal Page Num	Fold Catalog Name 🔺		₽
1x1 2	F2-1		

Show	 Allows you to select the filtering condition for the signature list from the pull-down list. [All]: The signatures in the list are not filtered and all fold catalogs are displayed. [the History]: Shows the history of fold catalogs that have been used. [the Filtering]: Shows a list of filtered fold catalogs with the number of page arrangements specified in Horizontal and Vertical.
Fold Catalog List	Shows the fold catalog list.

Edit Fold (No.1) X Continual Edit OK Page Fold catalog Print I

Print Circulation

Allows you to enter the number of copies for final printing.

Accessory settings

The following describes the accessory settings for the signature (fold), fold layout area and sheet. The accessory settings include the accessory setting mode and the accessory editing mode, which can be switched using the menu.

In the accessory setting mode, you can set the operation by selecting or deselecting the target check box (Fold, Fold Layout Area or Sheet).

It is also possible to make settings by selecting one of the accessory presets that have been registered in advance. In the accessory editing mode, you can delete the register marks and accessories separately as well as change the order for positioning the accessories.

It is also possible to add spine marks or a register mark to a signature.

Note	An accessory preset refers to the accessory setting information for the signature (fold), fold layout area or sheet. Once you have registered accessory presets for each printer or each work, you can position all the necessary accessories at the same time simply by selecting a target accessory preset.
Important	You cannot set accessories separately in the layout window when Auto Ganging is selected. To edit accessories separately, complete editing in the Auto Ganging wizard, access the accessory setting window in the Normal layout mode, and then edit the accessories separately.

Accessory settings Accessory settings window

For Fold



For Fold Layout Area



For Sheet



Apply Accessory Preset	Click this button to change to the show preset display window. For more information, see "Show preset display window".
Save Accessory Preset	Click this button to save the settings you made in the Accessory setting window as an accessory preset.
Apply to All Folds	Select this check box to apply the settings to all arranged signatures. Deselect this check box to apply the settings to the selected signature only. If no signature is selected, nothing is applied.

Register Mark	Select this check b You can switch wh check boxes. The Register Mark panes. The registe	Select this check box to place register marks. You can switch whether or not each type of register mark is placed by selecting the check boxes. The Register Mark setting is available in both the For Fold and For Fold Layout Area panes. The register marks that can be set in each pane are as follows.			
	 In the For Fold p Corne Fold C Sprec Sprec Page Cross 	pane er Center ad/Spine ad/Face Center			
	 In the For Fold L Corne Sprec Cross Cente 	 In the For Fold Layout Area pane. Corner Spread/Spine Cross Center 			
	Туре	Shows the register mark type.			
	Line Width	Shows the register mark line weight.			
	Width	Show the register mark width.			
	Height	Show the register mark height.			
	File Name	Shows the register mark file name.			
	When you select of Register Mark Corner_Mark.rgm Width: 15 mm Height: 15 mm Line Width: 0.05 mm	a register mark on the list, the Property window is displayed.			
	File Name	Shows the register mark file name. Click the Browse button to show the Register Mark Manager window, allowing you to modify the register mark file.			
	Width	Allows you to specify the register mark width.			
	Height	Allows you to specify the register mark height.			
	Line Width	Allows you to specify the register mark line width.			
Spine Mark	Select this check by You can switch wh check boxes. By default, the spi selected for saddl The Spine Mark so available only for	box to place spine marks. Thether or not each type of spine mark is placed by selecting the time mark check boxes are selected for perfect binding and not e-stitching. etting is available in the For Fold pane only. This setting is Normal.			
	, Туре	Show the spine mark type.			

	File Name	Show the spine mark file name or search file name.			
	When you select a spine mark on the list, the Property window is displayed. Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark SpineMark(DOWN_AllMacro]_H Browse				
Folio Mark	Select this check b The Folio Mark set This setting is avail	Select this check box to place folio marks. The Folio Mark setting is available in the For Fold pane only. This setting is available only for Normal.			
	Rotation Angle	Allows you to select a rotation angle for the folio mark from the pull-down list.			
	Ref.Point	Allows you to set the position for the folio mark.			
	Offset	Allows you to set the offset value for the folio mark.			
	Area Setting	Allows you to specify the size of the area for folio mark output.			
	White Cushion	Select this check box to make a white cushion under the folio mark.			
	Font Name	Allows you to select the font name for the folio mark from the pull-down list.			
	Size	Allows you to select the font size for the folio mark from the pull-down list.			
	Color	Allows you to specify a color for the folio mark. You can select [ALL] or [CMYK]. When [ALL] is selected, you can specify the concentration value for all colors. [CMYK] is for individual colors.			
Information Mark	Select this check b Mark setting is ave	ox to place the registered information mark. The Information ailable in all reference panes.			
	+	Click this button to show the Information Mark window, allowing you to set the information mark to be output.			
	D	Select a color bar and click this button to delete the color bar from the list.			

00 Information Mark Browse... ▼ Date-14pt.jin Ref. Point: Front Back . . . **b**. **..**. Rotation Angle: 0 \$ Side and Alignment: Offset: X: 0 mm Y: 10 mm ▼ Clipping Area: Right: 0 mm Left: 0 mm Bottom: 0 mm Top: 0 mm Output Condition: All Sheet Size: 150.0mm × 6.0mm Setting Contents: Date : %T

Other Accessory

When you select an information mark on the list, the Property window is displayed.

File Name	Shows the information mark file name. When you click the Browse button, the Information Mark Manager window is displayed, allowing you to modify the information mark file.	
Preview	Shows the preview of the information mark file selected in File Name.	
Information	Shows the settings and size of the information mark file selected in File Name.	
Ref. Point	Allows you to specify a position to place the information mark.	
Rotation Angle	Allows you to select a rotation angle for the information mark from the pull-down list.	
Side and Alignment	Allows you to specify the side to place the information mark. Front only: Places the information mark. only on the front side of the signature. Back only: Places the information mark. only on the back side of the signature. Two Sided Independent: Places the information mark. on both the front and back sides of the signature so that the amount of offset from the bottom left is the same on both sides. Two Sided Back To Back: Places the information mark. on both the front and back sides of the signature so that the color bar on one side is an exact opposite of the other side.	
Offset	Allows you to specify the amount of offset from the position to place the information mark.	
Output condition	Allows you to specify the sheet for which the information marks are output from the set sheets. Select the menu from All Sheet, Start Sheet, End Sheet, Except for Start Sheet and Except for End Sheet. This setting is only available for the plate and the sheet.	
Clipping Area	Allows you to specify the clipping width (top, bottom, left, and right) of the information mark.	
Select this check box to place the registered other accessory. The Other Accessory setting is available in all reference panes.		

÷

Click this button to show the Other Accessory Manager window, allowing you to add another accessory file.

Ē

Select one of the other accessories and click this button to delete the selected other accessory from the list.

When you select any other accessory on the list, the Property window is displayed.

	OtherAcces	sory	
CopyOf MCYK.mr	rk	Browse	
Ref. Point: Front	Back		
Rotation Angle:	90 😳		
Side and Alignment:			
Offset:			
X: 10 mm	Y: 0 mm		
▼ Clipping Area:			
Left: 0 mm	Right:	0 mm	
Top: 0 mm	Bottom:	0 mm	
Size: 50.	0mm × 20.0mm		
Clipping Area: Left: 0 mm Top: 0 mm Size: 50. Size:	Right: Bottom:	0 mm	

File Name	Shows another accessory file name. Click the Browse button to show the Other Accessory Manager window, allowing you to modify the other accessory file. - Allows you to specify a spine mark file (*.smd). - Width: Allows you to specify the width. - Height: Allows you to specify the height. The spine marks can be set only when Sheet is selected as a reference layer.
Preview	Shows the preview of the other accessory file selected in File Name.
Information	Shows the size of the other accessory file selected in File Name.
Ref. Point	Allows you to specify a position to place the other accessory. Other accessory image Positioning reference image
Rotation Ang	le Allows you to select a rotation angle for the other accessory from the pull-down list.

Side and Alignment	 Allows you to specify the side to place the other accessory. Front only: Places the other accessory only on the front side of the signature. Back only: Places the other accessory only on the back side of the signature. Two Sided Independent: Places the other accessory on both the front and back sides of the signature so that the amount of offset from the bottom left is the same on both sides. Two Sided Back To Back: Places the other accessory on both the front and back sides of the signature so that the color bar on one side is an exact opposite of the other side.
Offset	Allows you to specify the amount of offset from the position to place the information mark.
Output condition	Allows you to specify the sheet for which the information marks are output from the set sheets. Select the menu from All Sheet, Start Sheet, End Sheet, Except for Start Sheet and Except for End Sheet. This setting is only available for the plate and the sheet.
Clipping Area	Allows you to specify the clipping width (top, bottom, left, and right) of the information mark.

Note

If you change the page size for pages on which spine marks were already set in the imposition scheme, the spine mark size is automatically changed to match the page size.

Display of accessory preview

You can preview the selected accessories in the windows for managing accessories: the Register Mark Manager window, Color Bar Manager window, Information Mark Manager window, and Other Accessory Manager window.

00		Register I	Mark Manager		
II. / II. 🗑	■.				ОК
alue for Knocko	🖨 Built-in				
🔻 Register Mar	Name 🔺	Type	Last Update	Comments	Cancel
Corner	Corner_Mark	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
Page Cen	Corner_Mark_D	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
Fold Cen	Corner_Mark_E	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
Spread/S	Corner_Mark_F	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
Spread/F	Corner_Mark_G	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:	î	
Cross	Corner_Mark_H	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
				11	
-	A T		r		
	🗗 Custom				
	Name 🔺	Type	Last Update	Comments	
	CopyOf Corner_Mark	Corner	Jul 16, 2009 12:09:		
	Test_CornaerMark	Corner	Jul 9, 2011 11:28:5		

About Accessory Manager

00		Mark Manage	r		
				• Q	Close
Id value for Knockout : /	🛃 Built-in				
Register Mark	Name 🔺	Type	Size	Last Upda	
Information Mark	ColorPatch	EPS	27.3mm x 6.2mm	Aug 27, 2009	
Color Bar					
Accessory Simple Accessory					
 Collation Mark/log Si 					
	(
	≜ ₹ B Custom	*			
	Name A	Tuno	Sizo	Last Unde	
	Name =	туре	5126	Last opua	
	(1.

New	Allow you to create a new accessory file (register mark, spine mark, information mark or simple accessory). The accessory file is not able to create on the Macintosh client.
Edit	Allow you to edit an accessory file (register mark, spine mark, information mark or simple accessory). The built-in file can not be edited.
	The accessory tile is not able to edit on the Macintosh client.
Сору	Allow you to copy an accessory file. The built-in file is reproduced by the custom folder. The accessory file is not able to edit on the Macintosh client.
Delete	Allow you to delete an accessory file. The built-in file can not be deleted.
Rename	Allow you to rename an accessory file. The built-in file can not be renamed.
Import	Allow you to import an color bar file or EPS/PDF accessory file. The EPS color bar file is not able to import on the Macintosh client.



Note The function to replace output separations that is available with EPS color bars is not available with PDF color bars.

Apply Accessory Preset



Apply to layout	Applies the selected accessory preset in the layout and then shows the Accessory setting window.		
Cancel	Cancels the selected accessory preset display and then shows the Accessory setting window.		
Accessory Preset	Shows a list of preset is selected	accessory presets registered to the system. When an accessory ad from the list, the settings are displayed as preset data.	
	⊕ ₽	Click this button to show the Accessory Preset Manager window. You can create and add an accessory preset in this manager window. For more information about the Accessory Preset Manager window, see "Accessory Preset Manager window".	
Preset data	Shows the settings of the accessory preset selected in the list. Note that the settings cannot be edited. The contents of the display are the same as thee accessory settings.		

Accessory Preset Manager window

This window is used for managing accessory presets. You can list the registered accessory presets as well as create, edit, copy, delete, and rename an accessory preset in this window.

	● ○ ●	Acces	ssory Preset Manager		
	목 🖌 🐂 🛢 🔍				Close
	🛃 Preset List				
	Preset Name	Printing Style	Last Update	Comments	Help
	New Mark Set	Tumble	Jun 6, 2011 8:11:36		
	Sample_PerfectBoun	Tumble	Jul 8, 2011 7:39:14		
	Sample_PerfectBoun	Turn	Jul 8, 2011 7:45:28		
	Sample_Perfecting	Tumble	Jun 1, 2011 4:39:52	Sample of Tumble	
	Sample_SaddleStitc	Tumble	Jul 8, 2011 7:41:30		
	Sample_SaddleStitc	Turn	Jul 8, 2011 7:31:10		
	Sample_SingleSide	Single Side	Jun 1, 2011 4:40:02	Sample of Single Side	
	Sample_StepandRep	Single Side	Jul 8, 2011 7:52:48		
	Sample_StepandRep	Tumble	Jul 8, 2011 7:49:18		
	Sample_StepandRep	Turn	Jul 8, 2011 7:48:30		
	Sample_WorkandBack	Turn	Jun 1, 2011 4:40:08	Sample of Turn	
Пľ			A		

Toolbar	The following icons are displayed in the toolbar.					
	B	Allows you to create a new accessory preset file. Clicking this button starts the accessory preset editor. For more information, see "Accessory Preset Editor".				
	*	Allows you to edit an accessory preset file. For more information, see "Accessory Preset Editor".				
	۰.	Allows you to copy an accessory preset file.				
	Û	Allows you to delete an accessory preset file.				
		Allows you to rename an accessory preset file.				
		Shows a list of accessory presets that include the input charact string.				
Preset List	Shows a list of registered accessory presets.					
Close	Closes the Accessory Preset Manager window.					

Editing an accessory preset

Click the Accessory Setting icon to open the accessory setting window, and select Accessory Edit. The accessory editing window is displayed.

Image: Second	
Image:	\square
Add Accessony List Bronesty Move Collation Mark / Jog Side Mark Turn Left Investion Turn Pight Delate Change Order	
Add Accessory Accessory List Property Move Move conation Mark/jog side Mark Turn Left Inversion Turn Right Defete Change order	
Accessory calt 🔨 🗗 🦷 M 🖓 💘 🔍 Auto 💌 🔛	
Arrasson list:	cel 📄
He Name Layer Fanchord Number All Control	p
Folio Mark Lower Fold 1 Front	
Folio Mark Lower Fold 1 Front	
Folio Mark Lower Fold 1 Back Front	
Followark Lower Fold 1 Back	
Jog Side MarkH210_Closedro Upper Fold 1 Front	
Jog side Markn210_closedro Opper Fold 1	
Denistration warks	
Register Markum. Comer Markurg Edwer Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark. Correge Mark grin Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark	
Register Mark Conter_Markight Evret Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark Center Mark 1 r. Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark Center Mark 1 r Lower Fold 1 Bot 0 200 4400	
Register Mark. Center Mark 1 r Lower Fold 1 Bet	
Register Marky: Center Mark 1 r Lower Fold 1 Bott	
Register Mark: Center Mark 1 r Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark: Center Mark 1r. Lower Fold 1 Bot.	
Register Mark Center Mark 1r., Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark I.r., Lower Fold 1 Bot.,	
Register Mark: Center Mark 1.r., Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark: Spread Mark.rgm Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Register Mark: Spread Mark.rom Lower Fold 1 Bot	
Spine Mark H297 SpineMar Upper Fold 1 Front	
<u>o</u> ti an y of Save as	default
Error / Warning Information	

The window shows the accessory list by default.

Accessory positioning window

Clicking the Add Accessory button in the accessory editing window displays the accessory positioning window. This window allows you to position accessories for each file.

Register Mark	Shows a list of register marks. When you drag and drop a register mark from the list, it is placed at the selected position. If the register mark is dropped near an attachment point of register marks, it is placed on the attachment point. The attachment points of register marks are located in positions where register marks such as the signature corner, spread/spine, cross, page center, and fold center are placed.
Spine Mark	Shows a list of spine marks. When you drag and drop a spine mark from the list, it is placed at the selected position. If a spine mark is dropped on a signature, it is placed on a spin or jog side position for the signature.
Information Mark	Shows a list of information marks. When you drag and drop an information mark from the list, it is placed at the selected position.
Accessory	Shows a list of accessories. When you drag and drop an accessory from the list, it is placed at the selected position.
Simple Accessory	Shows a list of simple accessories. When you drag and drop a simple accessory from the list, it is placed at the selected position.

Accessory list window

This window shows a list of accessories that are placed.

Note

Clicking the Add Accessory button when the accessory positioning window is displayed opens the accessory list window.



Туре	Shows the accessory type.
File Name	Shows the accessory file name.
Layers	Shows the positioning layer.
Ref Anchor Pt	Shows a layout origin.
Fold Number	Shows the number of the signature for which accessories have been set.
Side and Alignment	Shows a side to place the accessories.

Editing accessories

You can edit accessories by selecting an icon from the toolbar at the top of the accessory editing window.

Property	+ Move	Move Collat	ion Mark/Jog Side Mar	¢ k Turn Left	Inversion	Turn Right	ි Delete	Ghange Order	
9 7			Allows you to change the linking for front and back printing and positioning of the accessories selected in the preview area. The operation is performed in a Property window that is the same as the one display when the accessories are set.					itioning of the the one displayed	
÷			Moves the access	ories selec	ted in the	preview c	irea.		
¢			Rotates the accessories selected in the preview area 90 degrees counterclockwise.						
9			Rotates the accessories selected in the preview area 180 degrees.						
3			Rotates the accessories selected in the preview area 90 degrees clockwise.						
9			Deletes the accessories selected in the preview area.						
₽			Allows you to set the order to position the accessories placed on the signature. The positioning order is set in the Accessory Order Setting window.						
			Moves the spine mark selected in the preview area.						
Move Spine Mark		1ark	This command is v	valid only f	for the spi	ne marks p	blaced i	n signatures.	
			4		Moves spread,	the spine r /spine or j	nark to og side	the next adja position.	cent left
					Moves spread,	the spine r ⁄spine or j	nark to og side	the next adja position.	cent right
			Moves the spine mark to the next adjacent up spread/spine or jog side position.					cent upper	
			Moves the spine mark to the next adjacent lower spread/spine or jog side position.					cent lower	
		Moves the spine mark to the other side.					÷.		
			ค		Undoes	the edits.			
			Allows you to perform editing again.						

Changing positioning order

0	0 01	Accessory Order Settin	ng		
5	9 8 4	• •			
	Type	File Name		Ref. Point	Fold No.
Regis Spine Jog S Orien	ter Mark:Cross Mark ide Mark itation Mark	Cross_Mark_1.rgm SpineMark_Collation.smd H210_JogSide.smd SpineMark_Orientaion.smd	Fold Fold Fold Fold		1 1 1 1
	Fold Layer	-			
	Туре	File Name		Ref. Point	Fold No.
Regis	ter Mark:Corner	Corner_Mark.rgm	Fold		1
Regis	ter Mark:Fold C	Center_Mark_1.rgm	Fold		1
Regis	ter Mark:Spread	Spread_Mark.rgm	Fold		1
Regis	ter Mark:Spread	Center Mark 1 ram	Fold		1
Folio	Mark Mark	Center_Mark_1.1gm	Fold		1
De	fault			Cancel	ОК

Too	lbar
100	inar

The following icons are displayed in the toolbar.

	0	. ,	
	B	Moves the accessory selected in the list for the lower signature to the top of the list for the upper signature.	
	Ð	Moves the accessory selected in the list for the upper signature to the top of the list for the lower signature.	
	T	Moves the accessory selected in the list to the top of the corresponding signature layer.	
		Moves the selected accessory up one higher in the list.	
	•	Moves the selected accessory down one lower in the list.	
	T	Moves the accessory selected in the list to the bottom of the corresponding signature layer.	
Display upper layer list	Shows a list of accessories placed in the upper signature.		
Display lower layer list	Shows a list of accessories placed in the lower signature.		
Default	Returns the accessory order setting to the default.		
ОК	Saves the accessory order setting and closes the window.		
Cancel	Cancels the settings and closes the window.		

Imposition Editor

The Imposition Editor window is displayed after you have finished setting up a new imposition using the imposition scheme wizard or after you have edited an existing imposition scheme. The Imposition Editor window has two modes, Imposition Editor mode and Signature order mode.

In Imposition Editor mode, you can manage signatures by adding, deleting, and copying them as well as edit signatures while viewing a preview.

In Signature order mode, you can view a preview of all of the signatures with page numbers and check whether or not the imposition scheme was created correctly.



Shortcut area	Shows the buttons for making imposition scheme settings.			
	Ø	Basic Setting:	Opens the Basic Settings window for the imposition scheme. The settings are the same as in the Basic Settings window in the new imposition scheme wizard.	
	-	Signature setting:	Shows Print, Layout, Accessory Setting, and Accessory Edit in a pull-down list, and allows you to open the selected setting window. The settings are the same as in the Basic Settings window in the new imposition scheme wizard. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.	
	D	Page Property:	Opens the Page Property setting window for setting individual page properties. For more information, see "Page Property settings". This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal, Section Layout).	
	391 85	Free Page Sequence	Shows the Free page sequence setting dialog box. For more information, see "Free page sequence setting".	
	Ó	Switches to Imposition Editor mode.		

	III Sv Yc Yc se	witches to Signature order mode. ou cannot edit an imposition scheme in this mode. ou cannot select this if other setting windows are open, so close all of the tting windows, and then use this mode.		
Signature order area	 For Normal layout No: Shows the numbers that were assigned, in the order in which they were set. Fold catalog: Shows the fold catalog name that was set. Set: Shows the number of duplicate signatures. You can click this to change the number of duplicate signatures. Use the icon buttons at the top of the signature order area to change the signature order. 			
	For Section • No: Shov • Sheet nar	For Section Layout • No: Shows the numbers that were assigned, in the order in which they were set. • Sheet name: Shows the sheet name of the print surface.		
	G.	Adds a new signature. Click this to display the New Sheet Wizard. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal, Fold Catalog Layout, and Section Layout).		
	5	Copies the signature selected in the signature order area. The copied signature is displayed at the bottom of the signature order area. This operation is available only when Normal Layout is selected.		
		Deletes the signature selected in the signature order area. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal, and Section Layout).		
	đ	Increases and decreases the number of signatures selected in the signature order area automatically. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.		
	Ģ	Cancels the setting that automatically increases and decreases the number of signatures. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.		
	^	Moves the display order of the signature selected in the signature area up one. This operation is available only when Normal Layout is selected.		
	V	Moves the display order of the signature selected in the signature area down one. This operation is available only when Normal Layout is selected.		

Shows the status of the imposition schemes in a list using four types of icons. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).


	θ	Indicates that the signature cannot be saved as an imposition scheme. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal, and Section Layout).
	A	Indicates that the signature can be saved as an imposition scheme, but that there is a problem with the layout. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal, Layout, and Section Layout).
	٨	Indicates that there is a signature being edited using Imposition Editor mode. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal Layout).
	+	Indicates that the setting to increase and decrease the number of signatures automatically is set. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.
Signature preview area	Shows a prev perform the f	view of the signature selected in the signature order area. You can ollowing operations in the signature preview area.
	•	Shows the previous signature when there is a double fold. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.
	1/1	Moves to the selected signature.
	•	Shows the next signature when there is a double fold. This setting is available only when Normal is selected.
	h.	Allows you to set the page dragged with the mouse as the page for which to make property settings. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).
	Ŷ	Updates the display area created by dragging the mouse. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).
	⊕	Redisplays the current display at 110%, from a center point clicked with the mouse. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).
	e ,	Redisplays the current display at 90%, from a center point clicked with the mouse. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).
	Auto 💌	Click the pull-down list to select a display magnification for the signature preview area from the displayed list. This setting is available for all imposition scheme layout types (Normal and Section Layout).
	5 A 4 5	Click this button to show dimensions in the preview window.
	۲ ۰۱	Click this button to show dimensions in the preview window.
Preview selection	Switches the This is display	preview mode. yed for all of the Normal and Section Layout types.
		The preview window is split into left and right panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.
		The preview window is split into top and bottom panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.

	-	
	The preview window shows the front side only.	
	Ð	The preview window shows the back side only.
Detailed display area	Shows the settings that have been made for the imposition scheme.	
Error message area	[Error / Warning Information] Shows errors and warnings generated while editing an imposition scheme.	

Signature order mode

You can switch to Signature order mode by clicking the 💷 mode switch button.

This view allows you to display a simple preview that includes the page numbers in the imposition scheme (preview of the orientation of the sheet, and the pages as well as their relative positions) and whether or not the imposition scheme settings were made correctly.



No.	Shows the sequential number of the imposition scheme.
Fold catalog	Shows the fold catalog name set in the imposition scheme.
Front	Shows a simple preview of the front sheet (sheet and page layout).
Back	Shows a simple preview of the back sheet (sheet and page layout).
Setting Information	Shows the plate size and the paper size.
Print Signature Order	The content of the imposition scheme progress is printed on the printer.

Important

Note that you cannot edit the imposition scheme when you are in this mode.

Page Property settings

Click A to display the Page Property window. In the Page Property window, you can individually change the settings made for the page selected in the signature preview area. When you confirm a setting by moving to the input area of another setting or clicking the mouse in another part of the window, it is applied to the preview.

	Page Property	Imposition Editor <new></new>
' Basic		e Property
	Page No in Signature:	Cancel
	Width:	100 0 200 400 Help
	Height:	
	Angle: 0	Print Signature order
Page Margin(s)	4 1 1
	Spine:	
	Top:	
	Bottom:	
Bleed(s)		
	Spine:	
	Face:	2 3
	Тор:	
	Bottom:	
Other	Milling width:	
	Over fold: Width:	
		Num Side Message T
)(4))
Page M Bleed Other	argin(s)	 Allows you to change the basic settings for the page. Page No: Shows the number of the page on the sheet. Page No in Signature: Allows you to set the page numbers within the fold catalog that was positioned on the sheet. You can set the same page number for multiple pages, but you cannot make changes that omit page numbers. Page numbers start on page 1 for each fold catalog. Width: Allows you to set the page width. Height: Allows you to set the page height. Angel: You can select 0 (0 deg.) or 180 (180 deg). Allows you to set the margins around the page. The page margin includes the bleed. You can make separate margin settings in Spine, Face, Top, and Bottom. Milling width: Allows you to specify the milling width. The milling width is the margin added to the spine area between the pages in addition to the bleed and page margin.
		• Over fold: Allows you to set the over fold width.
Note	The Basi	c setting options cannot be set for Section Layout.
Impor	tant setting • When the co the co	number of duplicate signatures is set in the signature order list, the page property gs are applied to all of the pages in the same positions in the duplicate signatures. the Normal Layout is selected, if you apply the page property settings to one of pied signatures in the layout, the page property settings will be applied to all of pied signatures.

Affected area for page property changes

For the convenience of stacking and folding, there are times when the settings for other related pages also change due to page property changes. The relationships between settings and affected pages are shown below.

Setting	Related Page
Page width	Width of pages positioned vertically on the changed pages
Page height	Height of pages positioned horizontally on the changed pages
Bleed/page margin Top and Bottom values	Settings for pages positioned horizontally on the changed pages
Bleed/page margin Face and Spine values	Settings for pages positioned vertically on the changed pages
Milling width	Milling width for pages positioned vertically on the changed pages
Over fold width	Over fold width of pages positioned vertically on the changed pages

Dimension display

If you click in the signature preview area of the Imposition Editor window, the dimensions for the signature displayed in the preview area are displayed.



Print Signature order

When you switch to the imposition scheme list view, the Print Signature order button becomes active and you can print the imposition scheme list.

Print Signature order Layout

When you switch to the signature view, the Print Signature order Layout button becomes active and you can print the signatures that are displayed, or all signatures.

Free page sequence

Click E to display the Free Page Sequence window. In the Free Page Sequence window, you can change the signature selected in the work area as well as the page number setting. Click the Apply button to apply the value set.



Change page progress	Select this check box to enable the change of the pagination style.		
	Set same page number for all pages	Assigns a specified number to all selected pages.	
	Rise and fall all page numbers	Adds a specified value to the page numbers of all selected pages. If a negative value is specified, the specified value is subtracted.	
	Set sequential page number in specified direction	Assigns consecutive page numbers based on the start page number and page assignment order.	
	Set each page numbers	Allows you to specify the changed page number for each selected page number.	
Change page directions	Allows you to change the page orientation.		
Apply	Applies the settings to the selected pages/signatures.		

6. Imposition Parts

This chapter describes the objects to be laid out in imposition schemes and how to create and edit each object.

Accessory Preset Editor

Accessory Preset Editor allows you to create and edit an accessory preset that preserves only the accessory arrangement setting information for the signature (fold), fold layout area, or sheet.

Note Since an accessory preset does not contain information about the size and fold catalog type for the signature (fold), fold layout area or sheet, it is not necessary to register an individual accessory preset for each size or fold catalog. Therefore, once you have registered the necessary accessories for each printer or job as an

accessory preset, you can perform a plate surface layout when creating an imposition scheme simply by selecting the target accessory preset.

Accessory Preset Editor window layout

Accessory Preset Editor is comprised of multiple panes.

These panes are separated by split bars. You can change the size of each pane by moving the split bars.

ee C 🖸 🔿 🖉 Acces	sory Preset Editor
Accessory Preset Name: Comments: Printing Style: Tumble 🕒	OX Cancel
Simulation Layout: Sim_Id=2,000_Tunble ③ Simulate Layou New Constraints of the second seco	
Setting panel	Preview area

Note

The split bar is the frame that separates the window into several panes. You can change the proportions of the different panes by moving the split bars.

Accessory Preset Name	Shows the name of the accessory preset to be created.
Comments	Allows you to enter comments regarding the accessory preset. The comments entered here are displayed in the comment field in the Accessory Preset Editor window.
Printing Style	Allows you to select Single Side, Turn, or Tumble.
Setting panel	Allows you to make an accessory arrangement setting for the signature (fold), fold layout area and sheet. For more information, see "Setting panel".
Preview area	Shows a simulation layout of the set accessories.
ОК	Saves the edits and closes the Accessory Preset Editor window.
Cancel	Cancels the edits and closes the Accessory Preset Editor window.

Setting panel

Simulation layout

Select an imposition scheme layout to be simulated when the accessory arrangement setting is applied from the list and click the Simulate button. The preview area shows the simulation result of accessory arrangement using the selected imposition scheme layout.

Sim_Normal_000

Layout in which one signature is positioned



Sim_Normal_090

Layout in which one signature is positioned after being rotated 90 degrees



Sim_Normal_180

Layout in which one signature is positioned after being rotated 180 degrees



Sim_Normal_270

Layout in which one signature is positioned after being rotated 270 degrees



Sim_Layout_2x1_1

Layout in which two signatures are positioned



Layout in which two signatures are positioned after being rotated 90 degrees



Sim_Layout_2x2_1

Sim_Layout_2x2_2

Sim_Layout_2x1_2

Layout in which four signatures are positioned

21	♥ 20	¥ 29	\$ 28	Ŧ
24	17	32	25	
5	¥ 4	13	1 2	Ŧ
8	1	16	9	

Layout in which four signatures are positioned after being rotated 90 degrees

*24	21	32	29
- 17	20 *	-25	28
•8		*18	13
*1	4	* 0	12

Sim_StepandRepeat_1

Step and repeat arrangement of a positioned signature with a finish interval of 0 mm



	Sim_StepandRepeat_2	Step and repeat arrangement of a positioned signature rotated 90 degrees with a finish interval of 0 mm
	Sim_StepandRepeat_3	Step and repeat arrangement of a positioned signature with a bleed interval of 0 mm
	Sim_StepandRepeat_4	Step and repeat arrangement of a positioned signature with a bleed interval of 0 mm
	Sim_Ganging_1	Step and repeat arrangement of a positioned signature rotated 90 degrees with a bleed interval of 0 mm
	Sim_Ganging_2	Layout of signatures for different page sizes
Register Mark	Select this check box to place For more information, see "Ac	e register marks. ccessory settings".
Spine Mark	Select this check box to place spine marks. For more information, see "Accessory settings".	
Folio Mark	Select this check box to place For more information, see "Ac	e folio marks. ccessory settings".
Information Mark	Select this check box to place For more information, see "Ac	the registered information mark. ccessory settings".
Other Accessory	Select this check box to place For more information, see "Ac	e the registered other accessory. ccessory settings".

Preview area	
Preview selection	Preview selection
	The preview window is split into left and right panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.
	The preview window is split into top and bottom panes, showing the front and back sides in each pane.
ä	The preview window shows the front side only.
H	The preview window shows the back side only.
	Allows you to show/hide the rulers in the preview area.
	Displays the position and size of accessories.
h	Selects the accessory clicked with the mouse.
C	Updates the display area of the page in accordance with the mouse drag.
€,	Redisplays the current display at 110%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.
e,	Redisplays the current display at 90%, from a center point clicked with the mouse.
Auto	Click on the pull-down list to select from the displayed list a display magnification for the preview area.
5 A 2 S	Automatically adjusts the display magnification so the preview can fit in the window.

Starting up Accessory Preset Editor

Start up Accessory Preset Editor using the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client application. You can create a new accessory preset and edit it by using Accessory Preset Editor. However, an accessory preset cannot be edited from multiple clients at the same time. Therefore, if you open an accessory preset that is already being edited, the accessory preset is displayed in a view only mode.

Creating a new accessory preset

Follow the steps below to create a new accessory preset.



 Click I in the Accessory Preset Manager window to create an imposition scheme in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.

2. When the window to enter a new accessory preset name is displayed, enter the name of the accessory preset to be created and click the OK button.

	New	
File Name New Mark Set		
Printing Style Single Side)	
		Cancel Create

3. Accessory Preset Editor starts.

Editing an accessory preset

Follow the steps below to edit an accessory preset.

Operation

1. Click 🖋 in the Accessory Preset Manager window to create an imposition scheme in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client to start up Accessory Preset Editor.

2. Accessory Preset Editor starts.

Creating an accessory preset

Follow the steps below to create an accessory preset. This section describes how to create an accessory preset depending on the printer.



- **1.** Enter your comment and set the printing style.
 - 2. Select the Sheet tab and set the accessory to be arranged for a sheet.
 - **3.** Select the imposition scheme layout to be simulated in the simulation layout and click the Simulate button.
 - 4. Check the simulation result and edit the accessory arrangement setting if any problem is found.
 - 5. Save the accessory preset.

Fold Catalog Editor

A fold catalog indicates the folding method when sheets of paper are folded using a stacker/folder. This catalog only includes a folding method and does not include information for a binding type, binding direction, and finish size. Therefore, there is no need to register a catalog each time a different finish size and binding direction are used. When determining an imposition scheme, specify the information for a finish size, binding type, and total number of pages and add this catalog.

The page layout and the page order are created automatically from the fold catalog.

About Fold Catalog Editor

Select a fold catalog that is fit for a pattern the customer's stacker/folder can fold and create an imposition scheme. However, a stacker/folder may not always support folding patterns that are already registered. When no existing patterns are supported by the stacker/folder, a new fold catalog should be created. In this case, use Fold Catalog Editor to create and edit a new fold catalog.

Fold catalog type

Fold catalog are grouped into the following three types for management.

CIP4-defined fold catalogs

CIP4^{*1} defines approximately 90 types of fold catalogs in the JDF specification. You cannot edit this type of fold catalogs.

• TotalFlow Simply Prepress standard fold catalogs

This type of fold catalogs is registered when TotalFlow Simply Prepress is installed.

User-defined fold catalogs

This type of fold catalogs is created by a customer. The fold catalog created using Fold Catalog Editor are categorized as this type.

Note *1: CIP4 stands for The International Cooperation for the Integration of Processes in Prepress, Press and Postpress Organization. This organization is responsible for the definition of the JDF format. The specifications related to JDF can be downloaded from the URL below. http://www.cip4.org/documents/jdf_specifications/intro.php

- <Reference specifications>

 JDF Specification Version 1.3
- Pagination Catalog (using the JDF Fold Catalog)

Starting up Fold Catalog Editor

Start up Fold Catalog Editor using the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client application. You can create a new fold catalogs and edit it by using Fold Catalog Editor. However, a fold catalog cannot be edited from multiple clients at the same time. Therefore, if you open a fold catalog that is already being edited, the fold catalog is displayed in a view only mode.

Creating a new fold catalog

Follow the steps below to create a new fold catalog.

- Operation 1. Click I, in the Fold Catalog Manager window to create an imposition scheme in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client to start up Fold Catalog Manager.
 - 2. Enter a Fold Catalog Name to be created and click the OK button in the New Fold Catalog window that is displayed.

000	New Fold Catalog	
Fold Catalog Name:	Newly Fold Catalog	
		OK Cancel

3. Fold Catalog Editor starts up.

Editing a fold catalog

Follow the steps below to edit a fold catalog.

- Operation 1. Click 💉 in the Fold Catalog Manager window to create an imposition scheme in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client to start up Fold Catalog Editor.
 - 2. Fold Catalog Editor starts up.

Operating a Fold Catalog Editor

The following window is displayed when Fold Catalog Editor is started up for creating a new fold catalog. It is also displayed in the edit mode.

Setting Items	Fold Catalog Fold Setting Pold Setting Pold Setting Page Size Adjustment Free progress Division Setting Division Setting	Catalog Folding Procedure Sheet Preview	OK Cancel Help	— Preview
Setting Items	Allows you to chang Fold Catalog Basic Setting Fold Setting Page Size Adju Free progress Division Settin	e the Setting Area dis istment	play.	
Basic setting	Allows you to make	basic settings for a fol Allows Comm web p Sheet: Web:	d catalog. s you to select ion: Used for rinting Sheet-fed pr Web printing	ct a type of printing method. r both sheet-fed printing and rinting 9
	Sheet Count: 1	Allows double	s you to spec e-folded.	ify a number of sheets to be
	Total Number of Alignment: Column 1 4 2 3 4	Row Allows positic Click t inform	s you to spec oned verticall he Apply but ation.	cify a number of pages to be ly and horizontally on a sheet. tton to confirm the basic
Two up Binding	Head to Head (Foot	to Foot) Allows for a fo When sheet i a 1 Typica	s you to spec olding metho Head to He is folded as fo to the s folded as folded to the s folded as folded to the spectrum to t	tify Head to Head (Foot to Foot) od. ad (Foot to Foot) is specified, a follows.

	Head to Foot	When Head to Foot is specified, a sheet is folded as follows. 16 9 12 13 8 1 4 5 Typical template
Fold after cutting	Allows you to set the signature sto	itus after cutting.
	One signature with continuous page number	Applies a single signature number to spine marks for signatures after sheet cutting.
	Two signatures (1Sig, 2Sig) with continuous page number	Applies consecutive signature numbers to spine marks for signatures after sheet cutting.
	Double signatures with the same page number	Makes two signatures with the same signature number after sheet cutting.
Prohibit Saddle Stitch	Select this to prohibit the saddle-s	titching setting of signatures.
Fold Setting	Allows you to specify mountain for unfolded sheet.	old, valley fold, cut, and rotation settings for the
	U	Rotates the sheet by 90 degrees.
	<u>0</u>	Folds the sheet using a mountain fold.
	ত	Folds the sheet using a valley fold.
	×	Cuts the sheet.
	Apply	Restores the previous state.
Stacking Position	Allows you to specify the position Block2 ET Block1 ET Block2 Base F F Block1 O Base T F F	when stacking sheets.
	F	Moves the sheet to the left.
	→	Moves the sheet to the right.
	11	Flips the sheet.

Page Size Adjustment	Allows you to fine-adjust each p For tri-folding, you can adjust th smaller.	page size. e size of the page that is folded first so it is a little		
	Note: When this setting is not sp the same.	Reduce the width by several millimeters. Decified, all the page sizes are recognized as being		
	 Page Size Adjus Ratio 1 Size 0.353 mm OK Cancel 	Select the Page Size Adjustment from Setting Item		
	• Ratio 1	Allows you to specify the adjustment width of the page by ratio.		
	O Size 0.353 mm	Allows you to specify the adjustment width of the page by difference compared to the actual size.		
Free progress	Page Number 10 Vage Direction Apply Back Apply Next	Allows you to set the page orientation and front-back link freely.		
Division Setting	Vertical:	Allows you to set the dividing line used during the Divided Imposition output. It is possible to set one dividing line each in the horizontal and vertical directions.		
Folding Procedure	Step Display Folding catalog Preview 5	Shows the figure that illustrates the procedure of folding, rotation or cutting the sheet.		
	Rotate Right 90 Degree	Indicates that the sheet is rotated by 90 degrees.		
	Fold [11/2 UP	Indicates that the sheet is folded using a mountain fold or a valley fold.		
	Cut 1/2	Indicates that the sheet is cut.		
	[Bird	Indicates that the cut sheet is stacked.		

Sheet Preview		Shows an expanded image of the fold catalog. Note: The pagination that is displayed in the preview simulates the conditions of left stitching with a folded edge at the top.
Save	ОК	Saves the newly created or edited fold catalog.
	Cancel	Exits Fold Catalog Editor without saving the newly created fold catalog or the fold catalog being edited.

Creating a fold catalog

The fold catalog is determined based on the postpress processing that is performed after printing. We recommend that you check the postpress specification and folding method prior to creating a fold catalog. This section describes the procedure for creating the fold catalog we generally recommend for use.

Operation

1. Check the specifications of the postpress machines (folders/stackers and inline processing machine) prior to creating a fold catalog.

- **2.** Use a sample sheet and process it in the postpress machine. If you cannot use the machine, simulate by folding the sample sheet manually.
- 3. Return the processed sheet to the condition when it was printed. (Unfold the folded sheet.)
- **4.** Start up Fold Catalog Editor and make settings for Basic Setting and Fold Setting while checking the process order of the unfolded sheet. Check the process order in the Step Display window. Adjust the page size as necessary.
- 5. Save the fold catalog file.

Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor

Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor is a tool to create register marks and simple accessories that can be arranged into the layout of an imposition scheme.

You can create and edit register marks or simple accessories according to the workflow with this tool.

Functions of Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor

- You can create two types of objects, register marks and simple accessories.
- Various objects such as straight lines, rectangles, and circles can be created according to requirements.
- You can easily create precise objects using a function in which the object snaps to a grid. It is also possible to change the spacing of the grid.
- You can freely position the register marks and simple accessories you created into imposition schemes created in TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

Layout of the Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor window

Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor has two windows. They are the main Register Mark Editor/Simple Accessory Editor window, where you create register marks and simple accessory objects, and a Coordinate Input window, where you set the start point and end point for an object. This section describes the layout of each of these windows.

Main window

You can create and edit register marks and simple accessory objects in the main window.

Layout of the main window

[For creating register marks]

Editor bu	tton	Г			- 0	Quick	acce	ss t	oolb	ar			
(1)	Q, FIT 📌 🖽							Nev	Register	Sark - Reg	jster Mar	kEditor X	
Edit	Support V	iow.											
Setting	ference Ve dth	rizontal guideli rtical guideline:	nes /	✓ Line ✓ Contin □ Rectar	uous Line ngle Obiect	⊙ Circle	Ba Copy		Edit	e Continu sct	ous Line	Reference Point HFRight Bleed Size Ref. Pt. Hors: Bleed Ref. Pt. Hors: Bleed Ref. Pt. Hors: Bleed Ref. Pt. Reference Point Simulation	— Menu bar
	0	10	í	20				40 .		50			
2													
													— Work windov
8													
	~												
÷													
8													
	- 3												
8	S												
												Coordinate Input Window	
2												X: 0.0000 mm	
		7	5	2	Υ.	2				2	2	Υ: [0.0000 mm	
For Help, press F1												100 % X:21.100000, Y:70.000000 mm	— Status bar

[For creating simple accessories]

💼 📐 Q Q FIT	т 🦯 📼) =				New Acc	essoryM	lark - Simple	e Acce	essory Editor			- = ×
Edit Supp	oort Vie	эw											
Setting	Setup	Grid Reference Grid Width	Horizo	ntal guidelines Il guidelines	✓ Line ✓ Continu □ Rectang	⊙ c ous Line A T gle	ircle [Copy		Close Continuous Line 후グ Line 같을 Fill	Text Attribute	G+Reference Point	
		secong	20		30	40		50		Edic	170	an Reference Poinc	90
		· · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	a						, po	<u></u>	90, , , ,
		ы н н н				2	00 20	•					l
20										٥	Coordinate Input W	rindow 🖾	
2					· ·	4		2			X: 0.0000 Y: 0.0000	mm mm <u>Apply</u>	
For Help, press F1										100	% X:-3.900000. Y	: 59.000000	mm

Editor button	When you click this button, the commands that can be used to exit the editor are displayed.
Quick access toolbar	When you click any button on the toolbar, its corresponding command is executed.
Menu bar	Shows the menu commands. When you click a menu command, it is executed.
Status bar	Shows basic information about the command that is selected in a toolbar or highlighted in a menu, as well as the display magnification in the work window, and coordinates of the cursor position.
Work window	You can create or edit register marks or simple accessory objects.

Editor button								
	Saves the settings, and exits the Register Mark/Simple Accessory Editor tool.							
	Exits the Register M	ark/Simple Accessory Editor tool.						
	lf any setting item h displayed.	as been modified, the following confirmation window is						
	RAEditor Save changes Yes	to New RegisterMark?						
	Yes	Saves the settings, and exits the tool.						
	No	Discards the settings, and exits the tool.						
	Cancel	Returns you to the Color Bar Setting window.						

Quick access toolbar

💼 📐 Q. Q. FIT 🖈 📼 🛛	-				
Edit Support View	Cus	Customize Quick Access Toolbar			
EB Setting Horizo	v	Select Cursor			
t Setup Grid Reference	\checkmark	Zoom In			
I [→] Setup Grid Width	\checkmark	Zoom Out			
Setting	\checkmark	Display All			
ρ	\checkmark	Change Last Point Input			
	\checkmark	Distance			
<u>e</u>		More Commands Show Below the Ribbon			
		Minimize the Ribbon			

ĸ	Changes the cursor to the Selection cursor.
€	Changes the cursor to the Zoom In cursor.
ସ୍	Changes the cursor to the Zoom Out cursor.
FIT	Changes the window to the full view.
****	Changes the position of the last specified point.
[[[[]]]]	Measures the distance between 2 specified points.

Menu bar • Edit tab - Setting category [Setting] 🔳

• For creating register marks

Settings	×
Layout Sheet Size Units Register Mark Type	
Width : [50.0000] mm	
Height : 60.0000 mm	
OK Cancel Help	

• For creating simple accessories

9	Settings 🛛 🗙
	Layout Sheet Size Units Font
	Width : [50,0000] mm
	Height : 60.0000 mm
	OK Cancel Help

Layout Sheet Size

Settings

Layout Sheet Size	Units Font	1	
Width : 60.0000	mm		
Height : 60.0000	mm		

Allows you to set the layout sheet size for the object file. Enter values in the Width and Height fields.

After a sheet size change, if the object extends outside the layout sheet, the object is automatically moved so that it fits within the layout sheet. If the object size is larger than the layout sheet size, the object size is automatically reduced so that it can fit within the layout sheet.

Units

Settings	×
Layout Sheet Size Units Register Mark Type	
• mm	
⊂ inch ⊂ point	
1point = 1/ 72 inch	
OK Cancel Help	

Allows you to select the units used when creating the object file. If you select "point", you can enter a value in the text entry field. This allows you to set the size of one point as a fraction of an inch.

Register Mark Type	Settings X
	Layout Sheet Size Units Register Mark Type Conner Mark Conter Mark Control Mark Constant Control Mark Contro
	OK Cancel Help

Allows you to select the type of register mark to create. This tab is only available when you create register marks.

Font

Settings		×
Layout Sheet Size Units	Font	
PostScript Font TrueType Font		
	Lancel H	eip

Allows you to select the font type. This tab is only available when you create simple accessories.

Important You must select TrueType Font for the font type.

[Spot Color Setting] 🧶

Allows you to add spot colors for lines and fills. This command is displayed only when you create simple accessories.

Spot Color Setting	
	Add
	Edit
	Delete
	Close
,	

Add

Allows you to add spot colors.

When you click the Add button, the Add Spot Color window is displayed.

Add Spot Color	×
Name :	
F Imitation Color-	
Y: 0	%
M: 0	%
C: 0	%
K: 0	%
	Connect
	Lancel

Name

Allows you to enter a name for the new spot color.

	Spot Color Preview	Shows a preview of the spot color you specified in Imitation Color.		
	Imitation Color	Allows you to enter dot percentages for each of the CMYK separations for the simulation of the new spot color.		
Edit	When you click window is displo the window that	When you click this button with a spot color selected in the list, the Add Spot Color window is displayed. The contents of this window are the same as the contents of the window that appears when you click the Add button.		
Delete	When you click color is deleted f	When you click this button with a spot color selected in the list, the selected spot color is deleted from the list.		

[Setup Grid Reference] 🚺

When you place a cursor in a position and click on it, the position is saved as the grid reference point (origin of the grid generation).

[Setup Grid Width] 🚺

Allows you to set the horizontal and vertical spacing between the points on the grid. When you set the grid spacing, a grid is displayed with equal spacing in the X and Y directions.

Width : 5.0000 mm	
Height : 5.0000 mm	
OK Cancel	

Width	Allows you to set the horizontal grid spacing. The unit specified in the Units tab in the Settings window is displayed.
Height	Allows you to set the vertical grid spacing. The unit specified in the Units tab in the Settings window is displayed.

[Horizontal guidelines] -----

When you place the cursor at a desired position and click on the position, a horizontal guideline that passes through the clicked point is drawn. You can create as many horizontal guidelines as you need. To exit the horizontal guideline creation mode, select the Select Cursor command from the Support menu.

```
Note
```

If you place the cursor over a created guideline and click on it again, the guideline is deleted.

[Vertical guidelines]

When you place the cursor at a desired position and click on the position, a vertical guideline that passes through the clicked point is drawn. You can create as many vertical guidelines as you need. To exit the vertical guideline creation mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

Note

If you place the cursor over a created guideline and click on it again, the guideline is deleted.

• Edit tab - Object category

[Line] 🖊

When you click on the start point of the line with the cursor and then click on the end point, a straight line is drawn. To exit the line drawing mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

[Continuous Line] N

When you click on a series of points without releasing the mouse, a continuous line that connects those points is drawn. To exit the continuous line drawing mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.



If you select the Close Continuous Line command, the last point will be connected to the start point and a polygon object will be created.

[Rectangle] 🛛

Note

When you click on the start point with the cursor and then click on an opposite corner point, a rectangle is drawn. To exit the rectangle drawing mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

[Circle] 🕜

When you click on the center point with the cursor and then click on a radius point, a circle is drawn. To exit the circle drawing mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

[Text] A

When you click on a position with the cursor, the lower left point for the text start position is specified. You can enter the text by specifying it in the Text Setting window and then click the Set button. This command is only available when you create simple accessories.

Text	Settir	ıg			×
	Font : Size :	Arial	8	point	▼
Text	t:				
					
					T
1					▶
	Set		Text Color		Cancel

Font	Allows you to select a font from the pulldown list.		
Size	Allows you to select a font size from the pulldown list. You can also change the unit for the font using the pulldown list on the right.		
Text	Allows you to enter the text string.		
Set	When you click this button, the Text Setting window closes and the text string you entered is displayed in the work window.		
Text Color	When you click this button, the Text Color Setting window is displayed. Text Color All Y: 100 Y: 100 X Y Y Y Y Y Y Y Y Y Y Y Y </td		
	Text Color Allows you to set the color for the entered text. If you select All, the color is set to 100% for each of the Y, M, C, and K separations. If you select YMCK, entry fields become available for each of the separation colors. Set the color by entering densities for each of the separation colors. If you select Spot Color, the pulldown list becomes available and you can select a spot color from the list as well as a density.		

```
Important
```

If you select Spot Color, you cannot set a color other than the specified spot color.

• Edit tab - Edit category

[Copy] 🗈

Copies the selected object.

[Paste] 🛅

Pastes the copied object onto the layout sheet.

Important	You cannot paste an object outside the frame of the layout sheet.
Note	If you display a grid, the object will be pasted at the grid point closest to the position that is clicked.
[Move] 🗈 Moves the selec	cted object.
Important	You cannot paste an object outside the frame of the layout sheet.
[Delete] <u> </u> Deletes the sele	cted object.
[Select All]	isplayed objects.
[Close Contir Allows you to m	nuous Line] 🖾 nake an open object into a closed object.
Before	After
Note	You can make fill color settings for objects that have been closed.

[Object] 🛃

Allows you to set object line weights and fill colors for the selected object. This command is only available when you create register marks.

Object Settings	×
Fill © On © Diff	Color Color All Seps, 100% All Seps, 0%
Line Weight 0.100	mm
ОК	Cancel

[Line] 🚧

Allows you to set the line weight and line color for the selected object. This command is only available when you create simple accessories.

Line Settings	×
Line Weight 0.100	mm
Line Color	
C AI	
• YMCK	
Y: 100	%
M : 100	%
C: 100	%
K: 100	%
C Spot Color	
	~
100	%
ОКС	ancel

Line Width	Allows you to set the line weight for the selected object.
Line Color	Allows you to set the line color for the selected object. If you select All, the line color is set to 100% for each of the Y, M, C, and K separations. If you select YMCK, entry fields become available for each of the separation colors. Set the line color by entering densities for each of the separation colors. If you select Spot Color, the pulldown list becomes available and you can select a spot color from the list as well as a density.

[Fill] 造

Fill Color



Allows you to set the color to fill the selected object.

If you select Off, the object is not filled. If you select All, the fill color is set to 100% for each of the Y, M, C, and K separations. If you select YMCK, entry fields become available for each of the separation colors. Set the fill color by entering densities for each of the separation colors. If you select Spot Color, the pulldown list becomes available and you can select a spot color from the list as well as a density.

[Text Attribute] 🛓

Allows you to select a font and size for the selected text.

This command is only available when you create simple accessories.

Text Setting		×
Font : Arial		•
Size : 💌	8 p	oint 💌
Text:		
screen		<u> </u>
		V
1		F
Set	Text Color	Cancel

Font	Allows you to select a font from the pulldown list.		
Size	Allows you to select a font size from the pulldown list. You can also change the unit for the font using the pulldown list on the right.		
Text	Shows the text string in the font you selected. Enter the text string that you want to use for your simple accessory.		
Set	When you click this button, the Text Setting window closes and the text string you entered is displayed in the work window.		
Text Color	When you click this button, the Text Color Setting window is displayed. For more information, see "[11] Text Color" for details of the text color. Text Color Setting Text Color All YHCK Y: 100 X M: 100 X K: 100 X Spot Color		

Important

If you select Spot Color, you cannot set a color other than the specified spot color.

100

ΟK

%

Cencel

[Text Color] 🦿

Allows you to set the color for the relevant text.

This command is only available when you create simple accessories.

Text Color Setting	×
┌─ Text Color	
O All	
YMCK	
Y: 100	%
м: 100	%
C: 100	%
K: 100	%
C Spot Color	
	~
100	%
ОК С	encel

Text Color

Allows you to set the color for the entered text.

If you select All, the color is set to 100% for each of the Y, M, C, and K separations. If you select YMCK, entry fields become available for each of the separation colors. Set the color by entering densities for each of the separation colors. If you select Spot Color, the pulldown list becomes available and you can select a spot color from the list as well as a density.

• Edit tab - Reference Point category

• For creating register marks

[Reference Point] 🛞

Allows you to specify the reference point when the register mark is arranged in the signature.

The clicked point is set as the reference point, and it is displayed in red. To exit the reference point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.



[Horiz. Bleed Ref. Pt.] 📫

Allows you to specify the horizontal bleed reference point so that the distance between it and the reference point is the same as the horizontal bleed width. This command is only available when you create register marks.

The horizontal bleed reference point is set for a corner mark.

The clicked point is set as the horizontal bleed reference point, and it is displayed in yellow. To exit the horizontal bleed point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

Corner mark	— Horizontal bleed point	
Important	If you select the Save command from reference point, the confirmation with	n the File menu without setting a horizontal bleed ndow shown below is displayed.
	RAEditor	
	A Set the reference point for the horizontal bleed.	
	ОК	

[Vert. Bleed Ref. Pt.] 📑

Allows you to specify the vertical bleed reference point so that the distance between it and the reference point is the same as the vertical bleed width. This command is only available when you create register marks.

The vertical bleed reference point is set for a corner mark, center mark, or spread mark.

The clicked point is set as the vertical bleed reference point, and it is displayed in yellow. To exit the vertical bleed point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.



:....

Important

If you select the Save command from the File menu without setting a vertical bleed reference point, the confirmation window shown below is displayed.



[Right Bleed Size Ref. Pt.] 👭

Allows you to specify the right bleed size reference point so that the distance between it and the reference point is the same as the right bleed width. This command is only available when you create register marks.

The right bleed size reference point is set for a spread mark.

The clicked point is set as the right bleed size reference point, and it is displayed in yellow. To exit the right bleed width point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

Spread mark



Important	If you select the Save command from the File menu without setting a right bleed size reference point, the confirmation window shown below is displayed.			
	RAEditor			
	Set the reference point for the right bleed size.			
	ОК			

[Left Bleed Size Ref. Pt.] 👯

Allows you to specify the left bleed size reference point so that the distance between it and the reference point is the same as the left bleed width. This command is only available when you create register marks.

The left bleed size reference point is set for a spread mark.

The clicked point is set as the left bleed size reference point, and it is displayed in yellow. To exit the left bleed width point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

Left bleed width point

Important



If you select the Save command from the File menu without setting a left bleed size reference point, the confirmation window shown below is displayed.



• For creating simple accessories

Allows you to specify the reference point for simple accessory objects.

The clicked point is set as the reference point, and it is displayed in red. To exit the reference point setup mode, select the Select Cursor command in the Support menu.

Important	If you select the Save command from the File menu without setting a reference point, the confirmation window shown below is displayed.		
	RAEditor		
	Set the reference point.		

• Edit tab - Simulation category

[Simulation] 📌

Allows you to view the resultant state after the conversion processing for the register mark data. This command is only available when you create register marks.

Register Mark Data Simulation	×
Vert. Bleed Size : 50000 Horiz. Bleed Size : 50000 Bleed Size : 0.0000 Rotation : 💌 0 Display MinMax Rectangle Simulate >>	•

Vert. Bleed Size	Allows you to set the distance between the reference point and the vertical bleed point (parametric reference point). This can be set for all register mark objects.	
Horiz. Bleed Size	Allows you to set the distance between the reference point and the horizontal bleed point (parametric reference point). This can only be set for corner marks.	
Bleed Size	Allows you to set the distance between the right bleed width point (parametric reference point) and the left bleed width point (parametric reference point). This can only be set for spread marks.	
Rotation	Allows you to set an amount of rotation for register mark objects. You can select 0, 90, 180, and 270.	
Display MinMax Rectangle	When you select this check box, the smallest possible rectangular frame is displayed around the register mark object.	
Simulate	Simulates the register mark object according to the settings you made.	

• Support tab - Support category

[Select Cursor] 🕅

Changes the cursor (e.g., position specification cursor and zoom in/out cursor) to the Selection cursor.

[Zoom In] 🔍

Enlarges the object as you click in the work window. You can also drag the mouse over an area to enlarge it.

[Zoom Out] 🔍 Reduces the object as you click in the work window.

[Display All] FIT Changes the window to the full view.

[Change Last Point Input] 💉

Changes the position of the last specified point. If you change the last point input, the changed point will become the reference point for the relative coordinate field in the Coordinate Input window.

[Distance] 📼

Measures the straight line distance between any two specified points as well as the distance in the X and Y directions between the two points.

Distance Meas. Results	×
Distance : 21.2132	mm
Horizontal : 15.0000	mm
Vertical : 15.0000	mm

Shows the straight line distance between the two specified points. Up to four decimal places are displayed for the value.
Shows the distance in the X direction between the two specified points. Up to four decimal places are displayed for the value.
Shows the distance in the Y direction between the two specified points. Up to four decimal places are displayed for the value.

Important

The values for the horizontal and vertical distances are shown as positive values regardless of the direction from the start point to the end point.

• View tab - View category

[Ruler]

Switches between show and hide of the ruler.

Note	If you want to change the ruler origin, you can click the cursor at the point where the horizontal and vertical rulers intersect and then drag the ruler origin to the desired location.

[Guidelines]

Switches between show and hide of the horizontal and vertical guidelines.

[Grid]

Switches between show and hide of the grid.

If you draw objects or set reference points when a grid is displayed, the relevant object snaps to the nearest point on the grid. In addition, you can change the grid reference point and spacing.

[Coordinate Input Window]

Switches between show and hide of the Coordinate Input Window.

In the Coordinate Input Window, you can specify a position by entering coordinate values. Select Abs. Coord. or Rel. Coord., enter the coordinate values, and click the Apply button to specify the position.

To display the Coordinate Input Window after it has been closed, select Coordinate Input Window in the menu bar.



Abs. Coord.	When this is selected, the coordinates for the layout point are specified using the lower left of the work window as the reference point. This option can be used for setting the coordinates for all points other than the Distance command in the Support menu.		
Rel. Coord.	When this is selected, the coordinates for the layout point are specified using the last specified point as the reference point.		
X	Allows you to enter the X coordinate.		
Y	Allows you to enter the Y coordinate.		
Apply	When you click this button, the layout point is positioned at the coordinates that were entered.		

• Help tab -Help category

[Help] ? Displays the manual.

[About Reg. Mark/Simple Acc. Editor] 🕧

Displays the version information.

Basic operations

Creating a register mark

This section describes the workflow from creating a new register mark to saving it, using a corner mark as an example.

Operation 1. Select Register Mark from the left pane of the Accessories Manager window, and select the Custom list area.

Eshold value for Knockout: Appl Image Center Type Last Update Help Corner Page Center Fold Center Spread/Face Corner_Mark_3 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Center_Mark_4 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Center_Mark_5 Center_Mark_6 Corner_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Corner_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Corner_Mark_6 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_6 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_8 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_8 Corner_Mark_9:36 PM Corner_Mark_7 Corner_Mark_6 Corner_Mark_7 Custom Mare Type Last Update Mare Mode Mark Mare Mode Mark Mare Mode Mark Mare Mode Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark Mark	Accessory Manager					
Pashold value for Knockout : Appl Name ▲ Type Last Update Help Corner Page Center Genter_Mark_1 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Image: Center Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Image: Center Image: Center Image: Center Image: Center Jul 29, 20				•	Q	Close
Register Mark Name ▲ Type Last Update Help Corner Page Center Genter_Mark_1 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Spread/Face Center_Mark_3 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Image: Center Image:	eshold value for Knockout : Appl	🖅 Built-in				
Corner Genter_Mark_11 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Page Center Center_Mark_2 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Fold Center Center_Mark_3 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Spine Center_Mark_4 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Face Center_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Cross Corner_Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Simple Accessory Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Color Bar Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V V Counter_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V	▼ Register Mark	Name 🔺	Туре	Last Update		Help
Page Center Center_Mark_2 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Fold Center Center_Mark_3 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Face Center_Mark_4 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Cross Corner_Mark Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_C Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Colume Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Cottor Mark/Jog Side Mark Costom V V V Custom Name N Type Last Update V	Corner	Center_Mark_1	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Fold Center Center_Mark_3 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Spine Center_Mark_4 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Face Center_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Cross Corner_Mark_D Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Mame ▲ Type Last Update V	Page Center	Center_Mark_2	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Spread/Spine Center_Mark_4 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Spread/Face Center_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Cross Corner_Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Provide Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Provide Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Provide Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Provide Side Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM V Provide Side Mark Provide Side Mark Provide Side Mark	Fold Center	Center_Mark_3	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Spread/Face Center_Mark_5 Center Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Cross Corner_Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Parcode Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G	Spread/Spine	Center_Mark_4	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Cross Corner_Mark Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM Other Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Barcode Image: State Sta	Spread/Face	Center_Mark_5	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Other Corner_Mark_D Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Information Mark Corner_Mark_E Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Color Bar Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Parcede Mark Type Last Update	Cross	Corner_Mark	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Information Mark Color Bar Accessory Simple Accessory Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Barcode Corner_Mark_E Corner Corner_Mark_F Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_ Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Mark_G Corner_Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Corner_Mark_G Corner_Corner_Corner Corner_Mark_G Corner_Corner_Corner Corner_Corner_Corner_Corner Corner_Corner_Corner_Corner Corner_Co	Other	Corner_Mark_D	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Color Bar Accessory Accessory Gorner_Mark_F Simple Accessory Corner_Mark_G Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Corner_Mark_G Barcode Corner_Mark_T	Information Mark	Corner_Mark_E	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Accessory Simple Accessory Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Barcode Corner_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Conser_Mark_G Corner Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM Cons	Color Bar	Corner_Mark_F	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Simple Accessory Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Barcode Custom Name ▲ Type Last Update	Accessory	Corner_Mark_G	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark Barcode Image: Custom Name ▲ Type Last Update	Simple Accessory	Anna an Atanto 11		M 20, 2010 7:00-20 PM	, <u> </u>	
Barcode Custom Type Last Update Name ▲ Type Last Update	Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark				·	
Name ▲ Type Last Update	Barcode	🛃 Custom				
		Name 🔺	Type	Last Update		
			- 71			
		•	1	1		

2. Click the 🖽 button.

The New window is displayed.

New		×
File Name:	New AccessoryMark	
	Create	Cancel
3. Enter a file name, and click the Create button.

The Register Mark Editor window is displayed.

R QQ	FIT 💉 📼) =				New	RegisterM	ark - Registe	er Mark	rk Editor 🗕 🗖 🗄
Edit S	Support Vie	ew Help								
Setting	rence Ver Setting	izontal guideline: tical guidelines	E Line	O Circle iuous Line ngle Object	Copy		Close	Continuous	Line	Image: State Point Image: The Point Point State Point State Point State Point
<u> </u>		10	20	30		40		50		60
140 140	•	 	•	· · · · · ·			•			
			·		·		·			
			•		с С				2	Coordinate Input Window S Abs. Coord. C Rel. Coord. X: 0.0000 mm
Eor Help, press F1										Y: 0.0000 mm <u>Apply</u>

- Setting the Layout Sheet Size, Units, and Register Mark Type
- Operation

1. Select the Setting command in the Edit tab.

The Settings window is displayed.

2. Make settings for Layout Sheet Size, Units, and Register Mark Type.

In this example, make the following settings. Layout Sheet Size: Width 60 mm x Height 60 mm Units: mm Register Mark Type: Corner mark

3. Click the OK button.

• Drawing an object

Important When you create a corner mark, use the lower left as the reference point, and when you create a center mark or spread mark, use the bottom as the reference point. If you use a wrong reference point, it will not be possible to orient the register mark properly when you position it in an imposition scheme.

Operation 1. Se

1. Select the Line command in the Edit tab.

2. Draw the lines that compose the corner mark.

Specify a start point and end point for a line on the layout sheet.

Repeat this operation to draw the lines as follows.

R Q	🔍 fit 🦯 📼	D Ŧ				New	RegisterMa	irk - Register Ma	Mark Editor 5	×
Edit	Support V	'iew Help								
Setting	ference į Ve dth	orizontal guidelines ertical guidelines	 ✓ Line ✓ Continuou □ Rectangle 	⊙ Circle s Line	Copy		Close	Continuous Line t	e @ Reference Point H [‡] Right Bleed Size Ref. Pt. ¬↓ Horiz: Bleed Ref. Pt. [‡] ↓ Left Bleed Size Ref. Pt. ¬↓ Vert. Bleed Ref. Pt.	
	Setting		0	oject			Edit		Reference Point Simulation	
8 	0		20	30		40		. 60		
					8 -			94 Q.		
<u>8</u> - - - -		· ·		• •	с. Ц			а а а в		
- -] 1	h.	82	Ċ.	4 H		
		ж. ц.			2.÷			54 - 54		
					а. Эл					
-										
									Coordinate Toout Window 1	
- - -				n					Coordinate input window 🔛	
				r	с. С.		U.	4 4	X: 0.0000 mm Y: 0.0000 mm	
										T
For Help, press F1									100 % X : 29.400000, Y : 64.500000 mm	

• Setting the reference point



1. Select the Reference Point command in the Edit tab.

Click the mouse pointer on the position you want to set as the object reference point.

2. Select the Vert. Bleed Ref. Pt. command in the Edit tab.

Click the mouse pointer on the position you want to set as the vertical bleed reference point of the object.

3. Select the Horiz. Bleed Ref. Pt. command in the Edit tab.

Click the mouse pointer on the position you want to set as the horizontal bleed reference point of the object.



• Simulating the register mark

Operation 1. Select the Simulation command in the Edit tab.

The Register Mark Data Simulation window is displayed.

2. Enter values for the horizontal bleed and the vertical bleed, and select the rotation angle.

In this example, make the following settings. Vert. Bleed Size: 3 mm Horiz. Bleed Size: 3 mm Rotation: 90

3. Click the Simulate button.

The register mark object that is associated with the bleed width moves and rotates 90 degrees with respect to the reference point.

- 4. Close the simulation window.
- Saving the register mark
- Operation 1. Select the Save command via the Editor button. The register mark file is saved.

Creating simple accessories

This section describes the workflow from creating a new simple accessory to saving it.



1. Select Simple Accessory from the left pane of the Accessories Manager window, and select the Custom list area.

📀 Accessory Manager					×
	•		•	Q	Close
eshold value for Knockout : Appl	Built-in				
🔻 Register Mark	Name 🔺	Туре	Last Update		Help
Corner	Center_Mark_1	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM	-	
Page Center	Center_Mark_2	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Fold Center	Center_Mark_3	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Spread/Spine	Center_Mark_4	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Spread/Face	Center_Mark_5	Center	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Cross	Corner_Mark	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:35 PM		
Other	Corner_Mark_D	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Information Mark	Corner_Mark_E	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Color Bar	Corner_Mark_F	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Accessory	Corner_Mark_G	Corner	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:36 PM		
Simple Accessory	Anna an Atlantic II		M 20 2010 7:00-20 PM	Ì	
Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark				_	
Barcode	🛃 Custom				
	Name 🔺	Туре	Last Update		
	•	·		Þ	

2. Click the 🖽 button.

The New window is displayed.

New		×
File Name:	New AccessoryMark	
	Create	Cancel

3. Enter a file name, and click the Create button.

The Simple Accessory Editor window is displayed.

💼 📐 🔍 🖓 F	N Q Q FIT ✓ □ =						New AccessoryMark - Simple Accessory Editor							
Edit Sup	port V	/iew Hel	p											
🔢 Setting 🕭 Spot Color Settings	Setu	up Grid Referi up Grid Width Setting	ence	Horizont	al guidelines guidelines		ine Continuous Line tectangle Object	⊙ Circle A Text	Copy		Close Continuous Line * Line Fill Edit	Text Attribute	Reference Point	
I		10		20		30		40	50		60	70	80	90
		1	89	0			8 -		2	10				
1														
	4	6	×:	12		÷			15					
-														
	2	\times	8	0	-		0	2						
-				¥.										
-				2										
-														
	4													
-		2	82	0	-		8	8 - X		83	3	oordinate Input W	'indow 🗵	
												Abs. Coord. O	Rel. Coord.	
				÷			G (X: 0.0000	mm	
				2								Y: 0.0000	mm	
-												,	Annly	
													CHAA	
1														
or Help, press F1											100 %	6 X:-3.900000, Y	: 59.000000	mm

• Setting the Layout Sheet Size, Units, and Font



1. Select the Setting command in the Edit tab.

The Settings window is displayed.



2. Make settings for Layout Sheet Size, Units, and Font.

In this example, make the following settings. Layout Sheet Size: Width 40 mm x Height 10 mm Units: mm Font: TureType Font

3. Click the OK button.

• Drawing an object

Operation 1. Select the Rectangle command in the Edit tab.

2. Draw the rectangles that compose the simple accessory.

Specify a start point and an opposite corner point for a rectangle on the layout sheet using the mouse pointer, and a rectangle will be drawn based on these two points.

Repeat this operation to draw the rectangles as follows.



• Line setting



- n 1. Select the Select All command in the Edit tab.
 - **2.** Select the Line command in the Edit tab.

The Line Settings window is displayed.

Line Settings	×
Line Weight 0.100 mm	n
Line Color	
O All	
YMCK	
Y: 100 %	
M: 100 %	
C: 100 %	
K: 100 %	
C Spot Color	
100 %	
OK Cancel	

3. Set the line weight and the line color.

Enter 0.2 in the Line Weight field and select the All radio button under Line Color.

4. Click the OK button.



• Color settings



1. Select the object for which you want to set a fill color.

2. Select the Fill command in the Edit tab.

The Fill Settings window is displayed.

Fill Settings	×
Fill Color © 0ff © All	
О ҮМСК	
Y: 100	%
M: 100	%
C: 100	%
K: 100	%
C Spot Color	
	~
100	%
ОКС	ancel

3. Set the fill color for the selected rectangle object.

In this example, the selected rectangle object is to be filled with yellow. After selecting the YMCK radio button, enter 100 in the Y field and 0 in the M, C, and K fields.

4. Click the OK button.

The selected rectangle object is filled with yellow.



5. Set the fill colors for the other three rectangle objects.

Fill the other three rectangle objects with magenta, cyan, and black respectively, using the procedure in steps 1 to 4.



- iterererer i
- Setting the reference point

Operation 1. Select the Reference Point command in the Edit tab.

Click the mouse pointer on the position you want to set as the simple accessory reference point.

📭 📐 Q. Q. FIT 🖈 💷 🔹	New AccessoryMark - Simple Accessory Edito	r _ = ×
Edit Support View Help		
Setting Setup Grid Reference Horizontal guidelines	Line O Circle Copy B La Cose	Continuous Line 🚈 Text Attribute 🔞 Reference Point
Spot Color Settings Setup Grid Width Vertical guidelines	K Continuous Line A Text Continuous Line A Text Beste Ime Ime	🖍 Text Color
Catting	Rectangle Bit Chierce	Edit Deference Paint
l lo l10	20 10 140	50 150 160 1
		J.
-		
1		
·•		
•		
<u>-</u>		
-		
1		
-		
-		
8		
		Coordinate Input Window 🔯
-		Abs. Coord. C Rel Coord.
		X: 0.0000 mm
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		X: 0.0000 mm
8		
·		
Enr Help, press El		100 % X: 45.86667. V: 12.000000 mm
		111 13

• Saving a simple accessory



1. Select the Save command via the Editor button.

The simple accessory file is saved.

Macro characters for simple accessories

You can set the macro characters for simple accessories. The macro that has been set will be expanded when the relevant accessory is output.

The following describes the macro characters that can be set.

Macro	Description
%B or %b	The order number is output.
%O or %o	When the accessory is arranged based on the signature: The signature number is output. When the accessory is arranged based on the sheet, or signature layout area: The sheet number is output.
%F or %f	When the accessory is arranged based on the signature: The front and back of the signature are output. When the accessory is arranged based on the sheet, or signature layout area: The front and back of the sheet, or signature layout area are output.
%+01 to %+10	An arbitrary character string is output.

NoteThe following macro characters represent the character strings that are expanded in the Job
Property window of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.
%+01 to %+10

Spine Mark Editor

Spine Mark Editor is a tool to create spine marks that can be arranged into the layout of an imposition scheme. You can create and edit spine marks according to the workflow with this tool.

Functions of Spine Mark Editor

- Since the setup for start points, colors, repeat marks, and other settings are displayed on screen in real time, you can create spine marks while checking how they will appear on the signature.
- You can simulate how the spine marks you create will appear on the signature.

Layout of the Spine Mark Editor windows

Spine Mark Editor has two windows, the main Spine Mark Editor window, where you create spine marks, and the Simulation window, where you can simulate how the signatures will look.

Main window

You can create and edit spine mark objects in the main window.

Layout of the main window



Editor button	When you click this button, commands are displayed.			
Menu bar	Shows the menu commands. When you click a menu command, it is executed.			
Window selection tabs	When you click a tab, the corresponding setup window is displayed.			
Status bar	Shows the coordinates of the cursor in the object information area.			
Work window	Allows you to create or edit spine mark objects.			
Object information area	Shows a spine mark object based on the information set in the tab windows when the Set check box has been selected. The information displayed differs depending on which tab is selected.			

Editor button



Menu bar

Menu tab

• Setting 🔳

Allows you to make settings for the origin position, unit, size, font, and size of the repeat marks to be used before you create a spine mark.

Setting	×
Origin C Top Left Top Center C Top Right Offset : 0.0000 mm	OK Cancel
Unit mm I inch = 72 point	
Size Page >> Width : 10.0000 mm Page >> Height : 297.0000 mm Page >>	
Fold No. Setting	
Font	
Type : TrueType Font	
Font : Arial	
Size : 10 💌 point 💌	
Disposition : Horizontal Writing	
Rep. Mark Size	
 Size Settings 	
Width: 5.0000 mm	
Height 5.0000 mm	
When "Circle" or "Star" type is specified, the "Width" size is used to "Height" too. (Width = Height) C Link to Char. Size	
Comment	
'	

Origin	Allows you to set the origin position for spine mark objects. This origin becomes the reference for positioning spine mark objects. When you enter a value for the Offset field, the origin is set at the position shifted by the amount you entered in the X direction (left-right direction) from the selected reference point. If you enter positive numbers, the origin is offset to the right, and if you enter negative numbers, the origin is offset to the left.
Unit	Allows you to select the units used when creating the spine mark file. If you select "point", you can enter a value in the text entry field. This allows you to set the size of one point as a fraction of an inch.

Size

Allows you to set the size of the spine mark object you are creating. You can enter values in the Width and Height fields. If you click the Page button, the Height Setting window is displayed.

		Height Setting Page Size : A Standard Dir. : Ve	s dispidyed.			
		Page Size	Allows you to set a page size. The page size you select here becomes the height of the spine mark object. If you select Custom, you can enter your own height value.			
		Standard Dir.	Allows you to select the orientation of the height for the spine mark object. If you select Vertical, the height of the page size you selected becomes the height of the spine mark object. If you select Horizontal, the width of the page size you selected becomes the height of the spine mark object.			
Fold No. Setting	9	Setting Use Macro	When you select this check box, the macro formula entry field becomes active. Enter a macro formula for the signature number.			
Font		Allows you to set the type, font, size, unit, and disposition of the text used in the spine mark object. Make settings for each of these items using their respective pulldown list. TrueType Font must always be selected for Type. Font lists the TrueType fonts installed on the machine on which TotalFlow Simply Prepress is installed.				
Rep. Mark Size		Allows you to select the repeat mark size as specified or the same as the font size. If you select Size Settings, you can enter values for the Width and Height fields for the selected mark. Note that when Circle or Star is specified, you can only enter a value in Width. (The value entered for Width is also applied for Height.)				
Comment		Allows you to enter comments for the spine mark you are creating. You can enter up to 60 single-byte characters.				
Note The only variable each macro form The symbols that (Divide), are the single-byte char For example, if t number output is		les that you can enter are n and N. In addition, you can only use one variable in mula. Specify the formula using the four rules of arithmetic. at express the four rules of arithmetic, + (Add), - (Subtract), * (Multiply), and / e only symbols that can be used. You can enter the macro formula using up to 127 racters. the signature number is 4 and you set the macro formula to 2*n-1, the last signature is 7 (2 times 4 minus 1).				
Important If you set a hei Height Setting MarkEditor Intere is an ele Continue anyw		ght value in the window, the con ment protruding past the spine ay? OK Cancel	Height field that is lower than the value entered in the nfirmation window shown below may be displayed.			

Simulation III

Allows you to simulate the spine mark in the open file on the signature. For more information about the Simulation window, see "Simulation window".

Help tab

About Spine Mark

Editor Displays the version information.

Work window

The Spine Mark Editor work window contains three setup tab windows, Collation Marks, Backbone ID, and Orientation Marks. You can switch between these windows by selecting a tab.

Collation Marks window

Collation Marks Backbone ID Orient	ation Marks
I Set	
Start Pos : 80.0000 mm	Repeat Settings
Width : 5.0000 mm	Range: 100.0000 mm
Height : 10.0000 mm	Set by No. of Folds
Offset : 5.0000 mm	No. of Folds : 10
Mark Style	Repeat Pattern
Fill Marks	
O Only KeyLine	
Line Width : 0.000 mm	
🔲 Set Center Line	
Line Width : 0.000 mm	
Line Length : 0.0000 mm	Repeat Marks
Mark Color	© Yes
C All Seps. 100%	Type: Circle T mm
Sep. Settings	Short Proc. 200.0000
C: 100 %	
M: 100 %	Heset Hep. No. : 19
V. 100 V	Gap: 2.5000 mm
1: 100 %	Direction : 🔿 Up 💿 Down
K: 100 %	
Cutout Text	
Yes	
Type : Arabic Num 💌	
C No	

Set

This check box allows you to set whether or not to set collation marks. It is On when there is a check in the box and it is Off when there is no check in the box. The default setting is On. If you clear this check box, all of the fields in the Collation Marks window become inactive and you cannot set collation marks in the spine mark object you are creating.

Collation mark size

You can specify the size of the collation marks. Enter the start position of the collation marks in the Start Pos. field. In the Width and Height fields, set the width and height for the collation marks. In the Offset field, set the amount that the second and following collation marks shift from the previous mark.

[Collation marks created in a descending order by entering a positive value in Offset]



[Collation marks created in an ascending order by entering a negative value in Offset]



Mark Style

You can set the style for the collation marks. If you select Fill Marks, the collation marks are filled with the specified color. If you select Only KeyLine, the collation marks are displayed using only the lines with the specified width.

When you select the Set Center Line check box, centerlines with the specified line weight and length can be set for the collation marks.

[When Only KeyLine is selected with Set Center Line deselected]



[When Only KeyLine is selected with Set Center Line selected]



[When Fill Marks is selected with Set Center Line selected]



Mark Color

You can set a color for the collation mark. If you select All Seps. 100%, all the separations for that collation mark will be output at 100%. If you select Sep. Settings, the CMYK check boxes become active and you can specify dot percentages for each of the CMYK separations.

Mark Color					
C All Seps. 100%					
Sep. Settings					
C: 100	%				
м : 100	%				
Y: 100	%				
К: 100	%				

Cutout Text

You can set whether or not to have cutout text in your collation mark. If you select Yes, the Type field becomes active. This allows you to select the type of numerals you want in your cutout text. If you select No, cutouts are not displayed.



Repeat Settings

You can set the method for positioning repeated collation marks. If you select Set by Range, the Range field becomes active. If there are more collation marks than fit within the specified range, they are positioned according to the pattern selected in Repeat Pattern. If you select Set by No. of Folds, the No. of Folds field becomes active. If there are more collation marks than fit within the specified signature range, they are positioned according to the pattern selected in Repeat Pattern.





[When Set by No. of Folds is set to 4]



Repeat Pattern

You can select a pattern for positioning spine marks. If you select $|\mathbf{Y}|$, the collation marks will be positioned using a stepped pattern. If you select $|\mathbf{Y}|$, the collation marks will be positioned using a mountain pattern.

[When Set by No. of Folds is set to 5 and the repeat pattern is [



[When a negative value is entered in Offset and the repeat pattern is $[\P]$





Repeat Marks

You can set whether or not to have repeat marks. If you select No, repeat marks are not displayed. If you select Yes, the Type, Start Pos., Reset Rep. No., Gap, and Direction fields become active. If you enter a number into the Reset Rep. No. field, repeat marks are placed within the range of the specified number of signatures. Select a type of object from the pulldown list, enter values for the start position, the reset repeat number, and the gap, and then select a direction. The way repeat marks are placed depends on the repeat pattern.



[When Repeat Marks is set to No]

[When the repeat pattern is **11** and circular repeat marks are set with a start position of 200 mm and a reset repeat number of 4]



[When the repeat pattern is **M** and circular repeat marks are set with a start position of 200 mm and a reset repeat number of 4]





[When the repeat pattern is \mathbf{W} and circular repeat marks are set with a start point of 200 mm, a reset repeat number of 4, a gap of 2.5 mm, and an upward direction]



Backbone ID window

Collation Marks Backbone ID Orientation Marks						
I▼ Set						
Text:						
Start Pos. : 10.0000 mm						
C No	C All Seps. 100%					
Yes	Sep. Settings					
Start Pos. : 40.0000 mm	C: 100 %					
Fold Start No. : 1	м: 100 %					
Num. Type : Arabic Nun 💌	Y: 100 %					
Prefix :	K: 100 %					
Suffix :						
Reflect the "Fold Start No." in "Collation Marks" a	and "Orientation Marks".					

Set	This check box allows you to set whether or not to set a backbone ID. It is On when the check box is selected and Off when it is not selected. The default setting is On. If you turn this setting Off, all of the fields in the Backbone ID window become inactive and you cannot set a backbone ID in the spine mark object you are creating.					
Text	Allows you to enter text for the backbone ID. The text is entered in the font you selected in the Setting window, which is accessed by selecting Setting from the File menu.					
Start Pos.	Allows you 10 mm, the object. 10mm 月刊 S C R E E E N N S	to set the backb 月刊 S C R E E N N E W S	ne star one ID 月刊 S C R E E N N E ¥ S	t posit) is po 月刊 SCREEN NE¥¥S	ion fo sitione 月刊 SCREEN NE¥S	r the backbone ID. For example, if you enter ed 10 mm from the top of the spine mark

Fold Numbers

Text Color

You can set whether or not to display the signature numbers. If you select No, no signature numbers are displayed. If you select Yes, the signature number display setup fields become active. Enter the start position for the signature numbers in the Start Pos field. In the Fold Start No. field, enter a signature start number. Select the type of numerals to be displayed in the Num. Type field. In the Prefix and Suffix fields, enter the text to precede and follow the signature number. For example, if you enter 70 mm as the start position, 1 as the number of the signature from which to start, No. as the prefix, A as the suffix, and Arabic Num. as the type of numerals, the signature numbers appear as shown below.

Start Pos. 70mm	月刊SCREEN	月刊SCREEN	月刊SCREEN	月刊SCREEN	月刊SCREEN	
	N E ₩ S	N E ₩ S	N E ¥ S	N E ₩ S	N E ¥ S	
Prefix - Suffix -	, 第 折	 第二 折	 	第四折	五五	- Arabic Num.
You can set a colo separations for th CMYK check boy	or for the at text w ces becc	e back /ill be o ome ac	bone output tive ar	D text at 100 nd you	. If you D%. If _y can sp	v select All Seps. 100%, all the you select Sep. Settings, the pecify dot percentages for each

Reflect the "Fold Start No." in	When you select this check box, the positions of the collation marks and orientation
"Collation Marks" and	marks change in accordance with each signature number in the backbone ID.
"Orientation Marks".	

of the CMYK separations.

Orientation Marks window

Start Pos.: 287.0000 mm Vridth: 5.0000 mm Height: 10.0000 mm Offset: -5.0000 mm Mark Color C 100 % C: 100 % % V: 100 % % Y: 100 % %	Repeat Settings Image: B00000 mm Image: Set by No. of Folds: Repeat Pattern Image: Image:
Set	This check box allows you to set whether or not to set orientation marks. It is On when the check box is selected and Off when it is not selected. If you turn this setting Off, all of the fields in the Orientation Marks window become inactive and you cannot set orientation marks in the spine mark object you are creating.
Orientation mark shape	You can set the shape of the orientation marks. Enter the start position for the first orientation marks in the Start Pos. field. In the Width and Height fields, set the width and height for the orientation marks. In the Offset field, set the amount that the second and following orientation marks are shifted up or down on the spine. A positive value moves the mark down the spine and a negative value moves the mark up the spine.
Mark Color	You can set a color for the orientation marks. If you select All Seps. 100%, all the separations for the orientation marks will be output at 100%. If you select "Sep. Settings", the CMYK check boxes become active and you can specify dot

percentages for each of the CMYK separations.

Repeat Settings

You can set the method for positioning repeated orientation marks. If you select No, the orientation marks are all placed in the same position on the fold. If you select Set by Range, the Range field becomes active. If there are more orientation marks than fit within the specified range, they are positioned according to the pattern selected in Repeat Pattern. If you select Set by No. of Folds, the No. of Folds field becomes active. If there are more orientation marks than fit within the specified signature range, they are positioned according to the pattern selected in Repeat Pattern.

[When Repeat Settings is set to No]



[When Range is set to 40 mm]







Simulation window

The Simulation window simulates how the open spine mark object will look on the signatures.

Layout of the Simulation window

Simulation - (75%) × Right Stitcl 🔻 🕅 🔍 🔍 FIT Job Name : 🗍 ę Total No. of Folds 10 - Toolbar Simulation display area ton icons for or the

If you select the Simulation command of the main tab, the Simulation window is displayed.

T	
Toolbar	You can make condition settings for simulation. The toolbar shows button icons fo the menu commands, such as the zoom-in and zoom-out commands for the Simulation window.
Simulation display area	Shows a simulation of how the signatures will look.
Toolbar	
Total No. of Folds 10	Allows you to set the total number of signatures.
Right Stite -	Allows you to select right or left stitching.
THE REAL	Runs the simulation under the conditions that have been set.
€	Enlarges the display in the simulation display area.
Q	Reduces the display in the simulation display area.
FIT	Fits the entire simulated object into the simulation display area.
Job Name :	If you set a macro of "%j" or "%J" for outputting the job name on the spine mark, enter a job name for the simulation.

Basic operations

Creating a spine mark

This section describes the workflow from creating a new spine mark to saving it.



 Select Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark from the left pane of the Accessories Manager window, and select the Custom list area.

Caccessory Manager						
₽/\$\$	Close					
eshold value for Knockout : Appl						
🔻 Register Mark	Name 🔺	Туре	Last Update		Help	
Corner	_H210_ClosedFootMark	Collation & Jog Side Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:44 PM			
Page Center		Orientation Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Fold Center	_H297_SpineMark(DOWN	Collation & Jog Side Mark/S	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Spread/Spine	ClosedFootMark(zigzag)_H	Collation & Jog Side Mark/	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:44 PM			
Spread/Face	ClosedFootMark_H210	Collation & Jog Side Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:44 PM			
Cross	OrientationMark(DOVVN)_H	Orientation Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Other	OrientationMark(DOWN_zi	Orientation Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Information Mark	OrientationMark(UP)_H297	Orientation Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Color Bar	OrientationMark(UP_zigzag	Orientation Mark	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Accessory	SpineMark(DOVVN_AllMacr	Collation & Jog Side Mark/S	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:45 PM			
Simple Accessory	Contractive Contraction Internation	Collection of the Cale Manager	LU 00 0040 7:00 45 DM	۰.		
 Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark 				<u> </u>		
Spine Mark	🛃 Custom					
Jog Side Mark	Name A	Type	Last Lindate			
Orientation Mark	Numo =	1360	East opdate			
Barcode						
			1			

2. Click the 🗳 button.

The New window is displayed.

3. Enter a file name, and click the Create button.

A new Spine Mark Editor window is displayed.

Setting up basic data

Operation

1. Select the Setting command of the Main category. The Setting window is displayed.

- **2.** Set the origin for the spine mark. In this example, select Top Center and set 0 mm as the offset.
- **3.** Set the units to be used when making the spine mark. In this example, select mm.

4. Set the width and height of the spine mark.

In this example, enter 10 mm in the Width field and 297 mm in the Height field.

If you want to specify a macro for the signature number, select the Use Macro check box. Enter the macro formula for the signature number macro in the macro formula entry field shown below.

Fold No. Setting				
🔽 Use Macro				
l				

5. Set the font you want to use, with its size, unit, and writing disposition.

In this example, select True Type for Type, Arial for Font, 10 for Size, point for Unit, and Horizontal Writing for Disposition.

6. Set the size for the repeat marks.

In this example, enter 7 mm.

7. Enter comments.

Enter comments for the spine mark you are creating.

8. Click the OK button.

-	New SpineMark - Spine Mark Editor	_ = ×
Main		
E Setting		
Simulation		
Setting		
Collation Marks Backbone ID Ori	entation Marks	
🔽 Set		10.0000
	- Penest Settings	
Start Pos : 50.0000 mm	C Set by Range	
Width : 5.0000 mm	Bange : 100.0000 mm	
Height : 10.0000 mm	Set by No. of Folds	
0ffeet : 5 0000 mm	No. of Folds : 10	90.0000
Unser. Jacobo		
Mark Style	Repeat Pattern	
C Onlu Keul ine		│
Line Width : 0.000 mm		T 200.0000
Set Center Line		55.0000
Line Width : 0.050 mm		
Line wider: 14,0000	Beneat Marks	297.0000
Line Length : 14.0000 mm	C No	
Mark Color	• Yes	
All Seps. 100%	Type : Circle 💌 mm	
C Sep. Settings	Start Pos. : 200.0000	• •
C: 100 %	Reset Rep. No. : 5	
M: 100 %	Gap: 2.5000 mm	
Y: 100 %	Direction: C Up C Down	
K: 100 %		
Cutout Text		
• Yes		
Type : Arabic Num 💌		
C No		_
For Help, press F1		X:86.260000, Y:-31.320000 mm

Setting the collation marks

Operation

1. Click the Collation Marks tab, and select the Set check box.

2. Make settings for the start position, width, height, and offset for the collation marks.

In this example, enter 90 mm for Start Pos., 5 mm for Width, 10 mm for Height, and 5 mm for Offset.

3. Set the style for the collation marks.

In this example, select Fill Marks, select the Set Center Line check box, and use default settings for other items.

4. Set the color of the object.

Set the color for the marks. In this example, select All Seps. 100%.

5. Make settings for cutout text.

In this example, select Arabic Num.

6. Set the repeat range.

In this example, select Set by No. of Folds. If you select Set by No. of Folds, the No. of Folds field becomes active. Enter 10 in the field.

7. Set the repeat pattern.

In this example, select 🚺 .

8. Make settings for repeat marks.

In this example, select Yes. When you select Yes, the Type, Start Pos., Reset Rep. No., Gap, and Direction fields become active. Select Circle for Type, enter 200 mm for Start Pos., 5 for Reset Repeat No., and 2.5 mm for Gap, and then select Down for Direction.

9. Check the collation mark data settings you created.

• Setting the backbone ID

Click the Backbone ID tab, and select the Set check box.





1. Enter the text string and start position.

In this example, enter SCREEN NEWS MONTHLY in the Text field and 10 mm in the Start Pos. field.

2. Make settings for displaying signature numbers.

In this example, select Yes. If you select Yes, the Start Pos., Fold Start No., Num. Type, Prefix, and Suffix fields become active. Enter 70 mm for Start Pos., 1 for Fold Start No., No. for Prefix, and A for Suffix. Select Arabic Num. for Num. Types.

3. Set the color of the text.

In this example, select All Seps. 100%.

 Select the Reflect the "Fold Start No." in "Collation Marks" and "Orientation Marks." check box as necessary.

5. Check the backbone ID data settings you created.

Note

The font used for the text is the font you selected in the Setting window, which is accessed by selecting the Setting command from the File menu.

You can use a carriage return to enter a two-line character string. In addition, if you enter a "%J" or a "%j" symbol within the text string, these symbols are linked to job names during output. For example, if you use the backbone ID of Mark_%J for the job called SCREEN, Mark_SCREEN is shown as the backbone ID.

a Main	New SpineMark - Spine Mark Edit	tor –
Setting Setting	ntaion Marks	
Stat Ros - 287.0000 mm	Pepeat Settings	
Width: 5.0000 mm Height: 10.0000 mm	C No C Set by Range Range : 80.0000 mm	CORESP AND A
Offset : 5.0000 mm Mark Color	Set by No. of Folds No. of Folds: 2	trunt c the tr
All Seps. 100% Sep. Settings C: 100 %		Í Í
M: 100 % Y: 100 % K 100 %		297,0000
		•

Operation

1. Click the Orientation Marks tab.

2. Make settings for the start position, width, height, and offset for the orientation marks. In this example, enter 287 mm for Start Pos., 5 mm for Width, 10 mm for Height, and -5 mm for Offset.

3. Set the color of the object.

In this example, select "All Seps. 100%".

4. Set the repeat range.

In this example, select Set by No. of Folds. If you select Set by No. of Folds, the No. of Folds field becomes active. Enter 2 in the field.

5. Set the repeat pattern.

In this example, select **11**.

6. Check the orientation mark data settings for the orientation marks you created.

Simulating the spine mark



1. Select the Simulation command of the Main category. The Simulation window is displayed.

2. Set the simulation conditions.

In this example, enter 15 in the Total No. of Folds field and select Left Stitching as the type of stitching.

3. Perform the simulation.

Simulation - (75%)																×
Total No. of Folds 15	ft S	itito	hi	•			Ħ	0	Q.	e	Σ	FIT].	Jol	bΝ	lame : 📃 🙎
	Γ.	.												Ι.,		
											1331HH					
	10414	U MIND A	T NUMBER	а и ангиа	T NHH	U MANDA E	а и ангна у	а и ангна у	T NUMBER	T HIND I	J NUMPULE	T HIND I	T NUMBER	T NHH	т нирл с	
	ľ	ľ				`								ľ	Ì	
	ŧ	ŧ	1. I.	2		11/11	÷	*	1	ŧ	Ē	ł	¥.	5	Ŧ.	
	L	Ŀ		¢	¢							_		\$		
	¢	Ļ	-					-		¢	¢	Ŷ	-	[
	L					ġ	¢	ų	•	ľ						
	L					-										
	L															
	L															
	ľ	ľ	Ť	╹	•											
	L															
	L															
	L															
	h															

Note

You can also create a spine mark while the Simulation window is displayed.

• Saving the spine mark

Operation 1. Select the Save command of the Editor button. The spine mark file is saved.

Information Editor

Information Editor is a tool to create information arranged into the layout of an imposition scheme. You can create and edit the information according to the workflow with this tool.

Functions of Information Editor

- You can create a new information file or customize an existing information file.
- When you create an imposition scheme in TotalFlow Simply Prepress, it is possible to place the new information file in it.

Main window

You can create and edit information objects in the main window.

Layout of the main window



Menu bar	When you click any menu on the menu bar, a list of commands is displayed.			
Toolbar	Shows button icons for each of the menu commands. When you click one of these buttons, the corresponding command is executed.			
Commands	When you click a command name, the selected command is executed.			
Information Strings	Allows you to enter the text strings that are set for the information files. Specify the information that varies with the output conditions using the macro characters.			
Macro Character	Shows the macro characters that can be used in information files. When you double-click an item in this list, the corresponding macro character is inserted at the position of the cursor in the Information Strings area.			

Save	Saves the settings, and exits the tool.							
Simulation	Allows you to simulate the output state of the created information file.							
	Simulation - New Information							
	Plate name:CMYKSPOT1SPOT2 Time:Monday, October 03, 2011 12:30:04 Job name:							
	Displays the Simulation Properties window. You can enter the simulation conditions.							
	Displays the information file size and the X and Y positions for starting text printing. To hide the X and Y positions, click this button again.							
	 Enlarges the view in the Simulation window each time you click this button. You can also drag the mouse to enlarge a specific area. 							
	Reduces the view in the Simulation window each time you click this button.							
	FIT Displays the full view in the Simulation window.							
Close	Exits the Information Editor tool. If any setting item has been modified, the following confirmation window is displayed.							
	InfoEditor Save changes to New Information? Yes No Cancel							
	Yes Saves the settings, and exits the tool.							
	No Discards the settings, and exits the tool.							

Important The Simulation window displays a simulation based on the conditions entered in the Simulation Properties window.

Note that the actual output may differ from the display in the Simulation window in some cases.

[Simulation Properties window]

Simulation Prope	rties	×
Job Name:	Test_Job	(OK)
Fold :	1 т Тор	▼ Cancel
Spot Color:	SPOT1 SPOT2	A
		Ŧ
		<u> </u>
Plate Number:	00001	
Recorder Name:	PT-R8600 No.1	
Dot Pattern:	TF1-SQ01L	
Screen lines:	133	
Screen Angle:	M	-
		T
Device Res.:	2400	
Dot Gain:	DotGain.dgt	
Color Matting Profile:	Profile	
Hot Folder:	\\TF1\HFBoot\HF1	
Ticket ID:	123456789	
Ticket Info.:		
🗖 Offset Cor	trol 🔽 Exposure Control	

Job Name	Allows you to enter the job name.					
Fold	Allows you to enter the signature number (figure). For a front (top) signature, select Top; for a back (bottom) signature, select Bottom.					
Hot Folder	Allows you to enter the name of the hot folder. The character string of From JOB will be output.					
Offset Control	Select this check box if you want to check the output state for text when offset control has been used.					
Exposure Control	Select this check box if you want to check the output state for text when exposure control has been used.					
Settings

The Settings window allows you to make settings such as the size and the parameters for the texts.

Settings		×
Whole Style	e Fold Date	
Size		
Width:	90	mm
Height:	30	mm
Text Start	Pos.	
X:	5	mm
Y:	20	mm
🔽 Backg	round Color :	Settings
Uni	t: mm	•
Comments		
		OK Cancel

Whole Allows you to make basic settings for the information file, such as the size (width and height) and unit. Size Allows you to set the size for the information file. Enter the desired values in the Width and Height fields. Text Start Pos. Allows you to enter the X and Y positions for starting text printing. Text start position 100 mm 20 mm ₽late Name : ○ M Y K Spot 1 Spot 2 Date : Tuesday, November 06, 2007 12:42:13 PM Job Name : TEST 30 mm 5 mm Background Color Allows you to specify whether or not a background color should be applied in the information area. Select this check box to enable the background color settings. Clicking the Settings button displays the Background Settings window. Background Settings X • AI(0 % ΟK Cancel C Process Color 0 % С: М. % 0 Y % К: 0 %

	All	Select this if you want to apply background colors with the same percentage to all separations, including spot color separations.		
	Process Color	Select this if you want to specify different densities for each process color separation. No background color is applied in spot color separations.		
Unit	Allows you to spe	Allows you to specify the unit to be used in the information file being created.		
Comments	Allows you to en	Allows you to enter any desired comments (memoranda).		

[Style]

The Style tab is used to make settings related to the output font.

Settings				×
Whole Style	Fold	Date		
Font :	Arial			
Size :	9	•	Point	•
Attr. :	🗖 Bold	🗌 Italic	Color Settings	
Char Pitch :		0 <u>·</u>	mm	
Line Pitch :		0 <u>·</u>	mm	
			OK	Cancel

Font	Allows you to select the font type.
Size	Allows you to select the font size. You can select only Point for the unit.
Attr.	Allows you to select Bold or Italic.
Color Settings	Click this button to make text color settings. The Text Color Settings window is displayed.
	Text Color Settings X Image: Color setting set
	All Select this if you want to use the same density for the text in all separations, including spot color separations.
	Process Color Select this if you want to specify different densities for each process color separation. No text is output for spot color separations.

Char. Pitch	Allows you to set the distance between characters.
Line Pitch	Allows you to set the distance between lines.
Note	If you select All, the information text is also output in spot color separations. If you select Process Color, only the plate name and plate number are output for separations whose check boxes have been left unchecked. If you select a check box for a separation and specify 0 percent, all the text is output using 0% density.

[Fold]

The Fold tab is used to make settings related to the signature number (figure) style and the signature text strings.

Settings	×
Whole Style Fold Date	
Style : Arabic Num.	•
Top String:	
front	
Bottom String :	
back	
	Cancel

Style	Allows you to select the style for the signature numbers. You can select Arabic numerals only.
Top String	Allows you to set the text string output on the top (front) of a signature.
Bottom String	Allows you to set the text string output on the bottom (back) of a signature.

Example: If you set Style to Arabic Num. and Top String to front, "front 1", "front 2", (and so on) will be output.

[Date]

The Date tab is used to make settings related to the date and time.

Settings		×
Whole Style	Fold Date	
Style : C		•
Custom	ize	
%#c		
Macro :	Date & Time (%#c) Date & Time · Abbreviated (%c) Date (%#x) Date · Abbreviated (%x) Time (%X) Year without century (%Y) Year without century (%Y) Month name (%B) Month name (%B) Month as decimal number (%m) Day (%d) Weekday name (%A)	
	OK	Cancel

Style Allows you to select the language to be used for date and time. Select a language from among the following options. C. English, Japanese, German, French, and Italian. Customize When you select this check box, you can select a specific date and time format using the macros. Double-clicking an item in the Macro list inserts the macro character string at the position of the cursor in the text field below the Customize check box. Example: When English has been selected for the date and time style in the Date tab. Plate name: CMVKSpot 1Spot 2 Unime: Monday, December 16, 2007 06:04:15 PM

Note If you select C, the format used in C (the C programming language) is used for output. To output the date and time as information, the %T macro must be specified in the information text line in the main window.

Important If Customize is deselected, %#c (date and time) is used automatically.

Tool bar

The toolbar displays buttons that correspond to the various commands in Information Editor. When you click a button in the toolbar, the command associated with that button is executed. If you place the mouse pointer over a button, the name of the associated command is displayed.

	Allows you to make settings such as the size and the character.
<u>a</u>	Simulates the output state of the created information file.

Basic operations

Creating information

This section describes the workflow from creating new information to saving it.



 Select Information Mark from the left pane of the Accessories Manager window, and then select the Custom list area.

C Accessory Manager					×
			•	Q	Close
eshold value for Knockout : Appl	🛃 Built-in				
Register Mark	Name 🔺	Size	Last Update		Help
Information Mark	Bogen	70.0mm × 6.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:41 PM	E	
Color Bar	ColorMatching	90.0mm × 6.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:41 PM	(
Accessory	Combined(7pt-JOB 14pt)-T	120.0mm x 17.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:41 PM	C	
Simple Accessory	Combined(7pt-JOB 14pt)-T	120.0mm x 17.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:41 PM		
Collation Mark/Jog Side Mark	Combined(9pt-JOB 18pt)-T	120.0mm × 20.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:42 PM	C	
Barcode	Combined(9pt-JOB 18pt)-T	120.0mm × 20.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:42 PM	(
	CombinedInfo	120.0mm × 17.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:42 PM	C	
	CombinedInfo2	120.0mm x 17.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:43 PM	()	
	CombinedInfo2(PlateNo)	120.0mm × 20.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:43 PM	C	
	CombinedInfo(Bogen-Scho	120.0mm × 17.0mm	Jul 29, 2010 7:09:42 PM		
		400.0000.047.0000	14 00 0010 7:00-40 DM	Ì	
	▲ ▼				
	4 Custom				
	Name 🔺	Size	Last Update		
	▲				

2. Click the 🖽 button.

The New window is displayed.

New		×
File Name: New Information		
	Create	Cancel

3. Enter a file name, and click the Create button.

The Settings window is displayed.

Settings E	×
Whole Style Fold Date	
Size	1
Width: 90 mm	
Height: 30 mm	
Text Start Pos.	
X: 5 mm	
Y: 20 mm	
I Background Color : Settings	
Unit: mm	
Comments :	
OK Cancel	

Whole settings

Operation

1. Set the size.

In this example, set Width to 90, and Height to 30.

2. Set the position where text printing should start.

In this example, set X to 5, and Y to 20.

3. Set the unit.

In this example, select mm.

4. Set any comments desired.

Enter any comments (memoranda) in this area.

• Style settings



Click the Style tab.

2. Set the font and font size.

In this example, set Font to Arial, and Size to 12 Point.

3. Set the text attributes.

To output the text in bold, select the Bold check box. To output the text in italics, select the Italic check box.

4. Click the Color Settings button to make text color settings.

In this example, select All and set the density to 100%.

5. Set the character and line pitches (the distances between individual characters and individual lines). In this example, set Char. Pitch to 0 mm and Line Pitch to 1 mm. • Setting the signature



- **1.** Click the Fold tab.
- **2. Set the style for the signature numbers** In this example, set Style to Arabic Num.
 - **3.** Set the signature text string.

In this example, set Top String to front and Bottom String to back.

• Setting the time and date



1. Click the Date tab.

2. Select a date and time style.

In this example, select English.

3. Set the exact format.

In this example, the desired format is "Date & Time", so select the Customize check box and enter %#c in the text box.



If there are no macros corresponding to the information text string, you can skip the settings in the Fold and Date tabs.

• Exiting the settings process



1. Click the OK button to close the "Settings" window.

• Entering the information text string

Operation 1. In the Information Editor window, enter the text string you wish to output.

You can set the text in combination with macro strings, as shown below.

📲 New Information - Information Editor	×
<u>File</u> <u>H</u> elp	
Information Strings	Macro Character
Plate name:%Z Time:%T Job name:%J	Plate Name (%Z) Date (%T) JOB Name (%U) Fold Num. (%O) Fold Top/Bottom (%F) Recorder Name (%X) Plate Num. (%C) Dot Pattern (%D) Screen Lines (%O) Device Reso. (%T) Dot Gain (%2) Color Matching Profile (%3) Exposure Control (%Y) Offset Control (%K) Hot Folder (%H) Ticket Info. (%V) Ticket Info. (%V) Screen Angle (%4)

• Using the simulation function

Operation

1. Select the Simulation command from the File menu.

The Simulation window is displayed, allowing you to simulate the output state of text.



2. Click the 😭 icon.

The Simulation Properties window is displayed.

3. Enter the desired text in the text boxes.

Simulation Prope	rties	×
Job Name:	Test Job	ПК ПК
E LL		Consel
Fold :		Lancel
Spot Color:	SPOT1	
	V	
Plate Number:	00001	
Recorder Name:	PT-R8600 No.1	
Dot Pattern:	TF1-SQ01L	
Screen lines:	133	
Screen Angle:	M	
	Ċ –	
Device Res.:	2400	
Dot Gain:	DotGain.dgt	
Color Matting Profile:	Profile	
Hot Folder:	\\TF1\HFRoot\HF1	
Ticket ID:	123456789	
Ticket Info.:		
🗖 Offset Cor	ntrol 🔽 Exposure Control	

To simulate the output state of the job name, enter text in the Job Name field. Enter any text in other fields.

4. Click the OK button in the Simulation Properties window.

The results of the simulation are displayed in the Simulation window.

Simulation	n - New Information 🛛 🔀
🖀 21	
	- ₽late name: CMY KSPOT1SPOT2 Time:Monday, October 03, 2011 12:30:04 Job name:

• Saving the information



1. Select the Save command from the File menu. The information file is saved.

Imposition Configuration

In the Imposition Configuration window, you can set the default insertion layer and positioning order for accessories.

Layout of the Imposition Configuration window



B	Moves the accessory selected in the list below the signature layer into the list above the signature layer.
	Moves the accessory selected in the list above the signature layer into the list below the signature layer.
T	Moves the selected accessory to the top in the list to which it belongs.
	Moves the selected accessory up one position higher in the list.
-	Moves the selected accessory down one position lower in the list.
I	Moves the selected accessory to the bottom in the list to which it belongs.

Note

The upper and lower layers are located above and below the signature layer, and each contains 3 layers that use Plate, Sheet, Fold Layout Area, and Fold as the positioning references for layout.
The order of the positioning references is fixed as follows.

Upper layer: Sheet -> Fold Layout Area -> Fold Lower layer: Fold -> Fold Layout Area -> Sheet

Basic operations

Imposition configuration

This section describes the settings for the default insertion layer and positioning order for accessories.



1. Make the imposition configuration settings using the window menu of the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.

Accessory Order Setting	n Configuration	
	I	
Туре	Ref. Point	
Barcode	Sheet	
Barcode	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	
Register Mark:Cross	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	
Spine Mark	Fold	
Jog Side Mark	Fold	
Orientation Mark	Fold	
Barcode	Fold	
Register Mark:Cross	Fold	
Fold Layer		
Туре	Ref. Point	
Register Mark:Corner	Fold	1
Register Mark:Fold Center	Fold	
Register Mark:Spread/Face	Fold	
Register Mark:Spread/Spine	Fold	
Register Mark:Page Center	Fold	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark	Fold Fold	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark	Fold Fold Fold	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark OtherAccessory	Fold Fold Fold Fold	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark OtherAccessory Register Mark:Corner	Fold Fold Fold Fold FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark OtherAccessory Register Mark:Corner Register Mark:Spread	Fold Fold Fold Fold FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark OtherAccessory Register Mark:Corner Register Mark:Spread Register Mark:Center	Fold Fold Fold FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	
Register Mark:Page Center Folio Mark Information Mark OtherAccessory Register Mark:Corner Register Mark:Spread Register Mark:Center Information Mark	Fold Fold Fold FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet) FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)	4

• Changing layers

Follow the steps below to move a barcode that uses Plate as the positioning reference from the lower layer to the upper layer.



1. Select a barcode that uses Plate as the positioning reference in the lower layer list, and click the **set us** button.

The selected barcode moves into the upper layer list.

Accessory Order Setting	n Configuration
3 a v	I
Туре	Ref. Point
Barcode	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Register Mark:Cross	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Spine Mark	Fold
Jog Side Mark	Fold
Orientation Mark	Fold
Barcode	Fold
Register Mark:Cross	Fold
Fold Layer	
Туре	Ref. Point
Register Mark:Page Center	Fold
Folio Mark	Fold
Information Mark	Fold
OtherAccessory	Fold
Register Mark:Corner	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Register Mark:Spread	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Register Mark:Center	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Information Mark	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
OtherAccessory	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Barcode	Sheet
Information Mark	Sheet A
OtherAccessory	Sneet

• Changing the positioning order

Follow the steps below to change the position of a color bar that uses Fold Layout Area (Sheet) as the positioning reference.

Operation

Select a color bar that uses Fold Layout Area (Sheet) as the positioning reference in the lower layer list, and click the button.

The selected color bar moves to the position above the barcode.

🔴 🔿 🕥 🛛 Impositio	on Configuration
Accessory Order Setting	
5 9 × • V	X
Туре	Ref. Point
Register Mark:Cross	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Barcode	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Spine Mark	Fold
Jog Side Mark	Fold
Orientation Mark	Fold
Barcode	Fold
Register Mark:Cross	Fold
-	
Fold Layer	
Туре	Ref. Point
Register Mark:Page Center	Fold
Folio Mark	Fold
Information Mark	Fold
OtherAccessory	Fold
Register Mark:Corner	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Register Mark:Spread	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Register Mark:Center	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Information Mark	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
OtherAccessory	FoldLayoutArea(Sheet)
Barcode	Sheet
Information Mark	Sheet
OtherAccessory	Sheet
	OK Cancel

• Saving settings



1. Click the OK button.

This saves the default insertion layer and positioning order settings you made.

7. Ticket Editing

This chapter describes how to manage the tickets and the various processes that can be set for the tickets.

Managing tickets

In TotalFlow Simply Prepress, you can save the tickets to be used repeatedly as system shared tickets. The system shared tickets can be accessed and utilized during ticket import in the Action Plan window, as well as when tickets are issued manually.

The ticket management window can be displayed from the Window menu of the main window. This window allows you to create new tickets, edit and delete existing tickets, and perform other management operations such as changing names.

$O \odot$	Outpu	ut Ticket (Global)		
7 🖌 🖬 🗑				
Ticket Name 🔺	Workflow	Last Update	Comments	
_DefOutlinePdfAdvOut		Sep 10, 2011 7:34:0	Factory-shipments	
_DefPOD_133.224.48.114	🔬 📾	Apr 22, 2016 4:19:1	Factory-shipments	
_DefPOD_133.224.48.114_pagemode	🔬 📾	May 9, 2016 3:51:5	Factory-shipments	
_DefPOD_133.224.48.114_surface	🔬 🎰	May 9, 2016 3:51:3	Factory-shipments	
_DefPOD_Dummy		Sep 10, 2011 7:34:0	Factory-shipments	
				Close
				Close

Ę.	Allows you to add a ticket. Clicking this icon opens the window for editing a new ticket.
<i>•</i>	Allows you to edit a ticket. Clicking this icon opens the window for editing the selected ticket.
D	Allows you to copy a ticket. Clicking this icon copies the selected ticket.
9	Allows you to delete a ticket. Clicking this icon deletes the selected ticket.

In the ticket edit window, you can add a process to the ticket by dragging an icon from the process list in the left of the window and dropping it in the Workflow area. Each processing can be set in the setting area in the lower right of the window.

00	New Ticket-Print Processing Ticket	
Process	Workflow	Save
OutlinePDF -Advance	C Tircket	Cancel
POD(Provi	Name: New Ticket	_
	Created Date:	
	Last Update:	
	Priority: Normal	
	Select Plate Plate Add	
	Vellow Black Slack Cher Spot colors	
	Delete	
	Comments: sample_Comment	
		• •

Action Plan settings and tickets

Some of the setting items for the file output and recorder output processing are the same as the output settings in the Action Plan. As the settings in the Action Plan are used for these items, if you open the Ticket/Edit window via the output setting in the Action Plan, you cannot edit these setting items. Note, however, that this is not applied if the output processing is set in the input ticket.

Input 🚿

The input function allows you to make settings for processing performed during input, such as origin offset, or spot color loading.

Basic Setting

This window allows you to set the PDF origin and the Offset origin.

	ļ	Basic Setting
🔲 Use importing file i	nformation	
PDF Origin:	TrimBox +)
Offset Origin X:	0.0 mm	Y: 0.0 mm
Output Resolution:	2400	dpi
Plate:	Color Name Color Name Cyan Magenta Yellow Black Color Spot colors	Add Detail Release
Gray conversion		

Use importing file information	Check this checkbox to switch to high-speed processing mode using importing file information. Note that if you select high-speed processing mode, the options you can set become PDF Origin, Offset Origin, Plate (with restrictions), and thumbnails. Plate must be set to Other Spot colors. Spot colors cannot be converted to simulated CMYK colors.
PDF Origin	This setting allows you to load all of the box origins specified in the drop-down list when PDF data is imported.
	MediaBox : Loads the PDF data using the media size.
	BleedBox : Loads the PDF data using the bleed size.
	TrimBox : Loads the PDF data using the trim size.
Offset Origin	This setting allows you to set the amount of offset from the origin of the finished page in the signature template file to the origin of the finished page file to be input, in the X and Y fields using a number up to 5 decimal places.
Output Resolution	This setting allows you to enter the final output recorder resolution, from 72 dpi to 4,000 dpi using a number up to three decimal places. If you selected SPM for recorder output, enter that output resolution.
Plate	Double-click a plate to display the Plate Name Registration dialog box (you cannot edit the plate in this dialog box). Click Add to add a plate name. The Select Plate dialog box is displayed. See Note below for more information.
Gray conversion	This setting allows you to perform grayscale conversion during input processing. To perform grayscale conversion for all spot color separations, deselect Other Spot colors and One Arbitrary Spot Color from the plate for use.

Select Plate dialog box

🕘 🔘 🔵 S	Select Plate		
System Cher Spot colors Other Spot colors One Arbitrary Spot Color DIC 248s# R White	Add Add Spot Color Detail Delete Close		
Add	Select a plate to add selected), and click A frame. You can repea	from the Plate Name list (more than one plate can be dd to add the plate to the Plate Name list in the Basic Setting t these steps to add more plates.	
Add Spot Color	Allows you to display color values to registe	Allows you to display the Plate Name Registration dialog box and set the simulated color values to register a new plate.	
Detail	Allows you to display simulated color values	Allows you to display the Plate Name Registration dialog box and check the simulated color values.	
Delete	Select the plate to del message is displayed	ete from the Plate Name list and click Delete. A confirmation Click OK to delete the selected plate.	
Close	Allows you to close th	e Select Plate dialog box.	

Spot Color Filter

The Spot Color Filter frame allows you to change a spot color's plate name by modifying the following settings.

		Spo	t Color Filter
	Original Color Name	Adjusted Color Name	Add Release
🗹 Ad	just PANTONE Color Name	$(CVC, CV \rightarrow C)$	

Original Color Name	This allows you to display the name of the spot color plate. To add a plate name, click Add to display the Original Color Name dialog box. For details, refer to the Note below.
Adjusted Color Name	Click Adjusted Color Name to display the plate names registered in the Plate field in Basic Setting. Select an adjusted plate name.
Adjust PANTONE Color Name	Check this to change a "CVC" or "CV" character string added to a plate name to "C".

Original Color Name

•	Original Color Name	
System		Add
Cyan Magenta		Add Spot Color
Vellow Black		Detail
DIC 248s#		Close

Add	Select a plate to add from the Plate Name list (more than one plate can be selected), and click this to add the plate to the Original Color Name list in the Spot Color Filter frame. If you added process color plates in the Original Color Name list, the plates you can select for Adjusted Color Name are only spot color plates. You can repeat these steps to add more plates.
Add Spot Color	Allows you to display the Plate Name Registration dialog box and set the simulated color values to register a new plate name.
Detail	Allows you to display the Plate Name Registration dialog box and check the simulated color values.
Delete	Select the plate to delete from the Plate Name list and click Delete. A confirmation message is displayed. Click OK to delete the selected plate name.
Close	Allows you to close the Original Color Name dialog box.

Overprint

Overprint allows you to select how to load overprint settings specified in DTP applications.

Ov	erprint
More The Import DTP Overprint Information	
Import Process Color Overprint Information	
Import Spot Color Overprint Information	
☑ Import White Color Overprint Information	
Automatic Overprint for Bk100: None	•

Import DTP Overprint information		Select this to load overprint settings.				
		Use Process Color Settings	:	Select this to load overprint settings specified for process colors.		
		Use Spot Color Settings	:	Select this to load overprint settings specified for spot colors.		
		Use White Color Settings	:	Select this to load overprint settings specified for white.		
	Automatic Overprint for Bk 100	Specifies what is to be ov	/er	rprinted automatically during input.		
		None	:	Select this if you do not want the system to automatically apply overprinting.		

Tint&Text	 Select this if you want the system to automatically overprint K = 100% tints and K = 100% text in the file to be imported.
Text	: Select this if you want the system to automatically overprint K = 100% text in the file to be imported.

Important

Import DTP Overprint Information

• If Illustrator 9.x or 10.x transparency effects were set, be sure to turn on all of the options. When all of the options are selected, set None for Automatic Overprint for Bk 100.

Action

The Action frame allows you to make settings for font embedding and bilinear downsampling of images.

			Action		
🗹 Embed Font					
Delete Blank Pages					
Delete Custom Transfer Function	Apply:	🗌 Text & Illu	stration 🗌 Image		
Delete Custom Halftone Function	Apply:	🗌 Text & Illu	stration 🗌 Image		
Delete Custom BG/UCR Function	Apply:	📃 Text & Illu	stration 🗌 Image		
Correct Hairline	Apply:	0	point and below		
		🔿 Delete	Adjustment Width: 1.41	7	point
Bilinear downsampling of Image	Color:	73.0	dpi and above, downsample to	72.0	dpi
	Gray:	73.0	dpi and above, downsample to	72.0	dpi
	1bit:	73.0	dpi and above, downsample to	72.0	dpi
Add Thumbnails					

Embed Font	Check this to embed fonts used in the PDF file to be output.
Delete Blank Pages	Check this to delete blank pages within the PDF file to be output.
Delete Custom Transfer Function	Check this to delete custom transfer functions from the PDF file to be output. You can check the Text & Illustration checkbox and the Image checkbox.
Delete Custom Halftone Function	Check this to delete custom halftone functions from images in the PDF file to be output. You can check the Text & Illustration checkbox and the Image checkbox.
Delete Custom BG/UCR Functions	Check this to delete custom BG/UCR functions from the PDF file to be output. You can check the Text & Illustration checkbox and the Image checkbox.
Add Thumbnails	Check this to add thumbnails to the PDF file to be output.
Correct Hairline	Check this to correct hairlines, and then set a lower limit for the line point size in the Adjustment field. If you want lines that are the same weight or lower than the point size entered in the field, click the Delete radio button. If you want to correct those lines, enter a line weight in the Adjustment Width entry field.

Bilinear downsampling of	Check this to convert the resolution of images included in the PDF file to be output
image	to a specified resolution. You can make separate settings in the Color, Gray and
	1 bit fields.

PitStop

Set the PitStop operations. You can set the PitStop profile, PitStop action, and Certified PDF authentication.

Description of a PitStop Profile

A PitStop profile is a preflight settings file for a PDF file created by or used with Enfocus PitStop Professional. With Polished Input, this preflight settings file can be used to execute preflight processing.

	PitStop	
Use Preflight		
PitStop Profile: 標準		\$
- Explanation		_
Execute PitStop Action:		
PitStop Action	Add	
	Delete	
	Up	
	Down	
Certified PDF Authentification Setting		
Profile	Conditions	

Use Preflight	Check this to perform preflight using a PitStop profile.
PitStop Profile	Allows you to select a PitStop profile from the dropdown list.
Execute PitStop Action	To run a PitStop action for the input PDF file, select this check box, press the Add button, and then add an action to be run.
Certified PDF Authentication	Check this to authenticate Certified PDF. Click the Setting button to display the Certified PDF Authentication dialog box. You can change the conditions applied to the profile displayed in the list by clicking one of the radio buttons under Conditions.

Preflight Name	Description
DS_PDFX-1a_Fixed	With this file, the profile has been tested for problems and the problems have been corrected in accordance with PDF/X-1a. If a problem that cannot be corrected is detected in the PitStop profile, an error is displayed.
DS_PDFX-3_Fixed	With this file, the profile has been tested for problems and the problems have been corrected in accordance with PDF/X-3. If a problem that cannot be corrected is detected in the PitStop profile, an error is displayed.
DS_PDFX-4_Fixed	With this file, the profile has been tested for problems and the problems have been corrected in accordance with PDF/X-4. If a problem that cannot be corrected is detected in the PitStop profile, an error is displayed.
Standard	This is a PitStop profile that is set when creating a new profile. The profile is tested for problems, and all problems are displayed as warning messages.
Generic_PrePress	This is a PitStop profile for testing generic prepress and printing files. An error occurs if an RGB color inappropriate for prepress or printing or a color for which there is no embedded profile is used. Note: These colors are automatically converted to CMYK by the initial color conversion settings, so an error does not occur. Use this with a setting that does not perform color conversion.
• How to ac You can us	dd a PitStop preflight profile se preflight profiles created in PitStop Professional by registering them in TotalFlow
Simply Pre	press.

Standard Included PitStop Profiles

Add a PitStop preflight profile to the "PreflightProfiles" in "PrefInput" shared folder, and then restart the TotalFlow Simply Prepress service. The preflight profile will be available for selection on the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.

Standard included PitStop action files

Action Name	Description	
Sample	Allows you to add a "Confidential" stamped to every page in the PDF file being processed.	
Check NotEmbedded Font	When you select this option, fonts that are not embedded are displayed in purple.	
lmage toJPEG(MaximumQuality)	Color and gray images in the PDF file are converted to JPEG-compressed images.	
_AdjustTrimBoxV1	The TrimBox value is set again by recognizing the trim mark in the PDF file.	

How to add a PitStop action file You can use action files created using PitStop Professional. Add the action file to "ActionFiles" in the "PrefInput" shared folder, and then restart the TotalFlow Simply Prepress service.
Bilinear downsampling is a way of reducing the resolution of an image using an algorithm called "Bilinear" (averaging).Pixels are lost when you lower the resolution, so this allows you to reduce the amount of data. However, because the number of pixels is reduced, the quality of the original image deteriorates.

• About the _AdjustTrimBoxV1 action that adjusts the TrimBox value again

The _AdjustTrimBoxV1 action recognizes the trim mark in the PDF file. This action runs when the trim mark satisfies the following conditions.

Trim mark length	Less than 14 mm (40 pt)
Trim mark color	The color spaces are within the following range. CMYK CMYK (All): 100% CMYK CMY: 0%, K: 100% Separation Black Gray: 100% Registration (All): 100%
Trim mark position	The trim mark (corner mark) is a line attribute. The vertical position error of the horizontal register mark is less than 2.7 point (approx. 1 mm). The horizontal position error of the vertical register mark is less than 2.7 point (approx. 1 mm).
Trim mark shape	Recognizable corner marks are as shown below.

Certified PDF Authentication Dialog Box

Certified PDF	Authentification
Profile	Conditions
DS_PDFX-1a_Fixed	Do not use
DS_PDFX-3_Fixed	Stricter
Generic_PrePress	Equal
Standard	Do not use
Conditions Certified PDF profile must be equal to th Certified PDF profile must be strict than Do not use this profile for Certified PDF	is profile. this profile. authentification
Description of the profile To conform to Standard ISO/DIS 15930-1:20 PDF/X-1a:2001 are done. [Err] if PDF version is above 1.3 [Erx] if compression is not the optimum, ch	001, the verification and the correction of anges to ZIP
[Fix] if Trap flag is set unknown, set to not [Fix] if Title is blank, set to unknown	trapped
[Fix] if Producer is blank, set to unknown	
[Fix] if Creator is blank, set to unknown	at act to surrout data
[Fix] If mounication of creation date is not s	set, set to current date
[Frr] if Calibrated Grav/RGB is used	
[Err] if Lab color is used	

Profile	Displays a list of the preflight profiles referenced during certified PDF authentication. This list contains the same preflight profiles listed under the "Preflight" tab.
Conditions	 This setting sets the authentication conditions for the selected preflight profile. The certified PDF profile must be equivalent to this profile: Authentication is successful only if the preflight settings included in the certified PDF are exactly the same as the settings of the preflight profile specified here. The certified PDF profile settings must be stricter than the settings in this profile: In addition to checking whether all of the option settings are equivalent, other settings are checked and the data is certified after a stricter check. This profile is not used in the certified PDF authentication: The corresponding preflight profile is not referenced for authentication conditions.

• Certified PDF Authentication

When "Certified PDF Authentication" is checked, only a certified PDF can be input. Authentication is executed only for the input certified PDF. A certified PDF includes the PitStop preflight profile used when the preflight was run. That profile and the profile listed here are checked according to the specified condition, and when they match, the authentication is successful and the processing is continued. If they do not match, the processing ends in an error. If multiple profiles are listed, authentication is successful and the processing is continued as long as any one of the profiles matches under the specified condition.

Inp	out File Type	Certified PDF Status	Processing
PDF		-	Program ends in an error.
Certified PDF		Preflight profile that is not compatible with the criteria is used	Program ends in an error.
Certified PDF		Preflight profile that is not compatible with the criteria is used	Processing continues as certified.
Note	Refer to the conditions compatibility.	described in the Certified PDF Authentic	ation dialog box to check
Important	 PitStop Profession PitStop profile or Verifying Prefligh PDF Output Tab Progress Display If Fix is set for all Information choice 	nal must be purchased separately in create a new profile. t Results The preflight report file output to report output destination. The preflight report file output to report output destination. Results are included in the Input p or the Input processing report Pro- in the items referenced from the oviewer list in the Progress window about testing and corrections und about events. of the Preflight options, they are fixed es.	order to make corrections to a the folder shown as the error the folder shown as the normal processing report (Optimization) eflight error (Optimization) items event list in the processing/End w. Please see the information der Preflight for additional details ed regardless of the Error and
Note	• Conditions for Outp Setting "DS_PDFX-1a_ with the PDF/X-1a sta	utting in PDF/X-1 a Format _Fixed" for the PitStop profile makes it p ndard. However, the data is not fixed in	ossible to generate PDF files compliant a way that affects the way the

reproduction appears to the eye. If you want to fix the data in a way that changes the way it appears to the eye, change the action settings or color conversion settings as necessary. The following options are available.

Custom Transfer and Custom Halftone functions must not be used. In the Action tab, make the necessary settings for deleting these functions. These settings are not made when a new file is created, so please make the settings when necessary.
Only CMYK, gray or spot colors can be used.

In the Color Conversion tab, convert the image to a color type that can be used. This setting is preset when a new file is created, so the file can be used without further modification.

Error Check

	Error Check	
Ignore Font Error		
Treat as error when output intent does not match following	rofile	
DS_JapanColor2001 type3-Coated V1	\$	
Treat as error when PDF with following color space is detected	d	
RGB, Lab <text illustration="" only=""></text>	٢	
eat as error when following files are input:		
✓ RIPed PDF		
Outline PDF		
Separation PDF		

Ignore Font Error	No error is activated and the processing is continued even if no fonts are embedded.
Treat as error when output intent does not match following profile	An error is activated and the processing is not continued if the output intent set in the input data is not the same as the one specified below.
Treat as error when PDF with following color space is detected	An error is activated and the processing is not continued if the PDF includes an object that corresponds to the color setting specified below.
Treat as error when following files are input	An error is activated and the processing is not continued if the format of the input file is one of the formats checked below

PDF Output

The PDF Output frame allows you to make settings for PDF output.

PPP_%n		
#localhost¥general¥output¥polished	Browse	
Include Output PDF)		
#localhost¥general¥output¥error	Browse	Same as PDF
Preflight PDF Report		
rt.		
#localhost¥general¥output¥polished	Browse	Same as PDF
Preflight PDF Report		
	PPP_%n MocalhostVgeneralWoutputVpolished Include Output PDF) MocalhostVgeneralWoutputVerror Preflight PDF Report Include Output Vpolished Preflight PDF Report Include Output PDF Inc	PPP_%n Image: Constraint of the second sec

Output File Name	Allows you to specify a name for the file to be output. You can directly enter the file name or select a combination of the macros from the pull-down list. You can also use the macros when you directly enter the file name. For more information, see "Output File Name Macros".
Output PDF	Check this to output the PDF to the folder specified in Output Path. You can click the Browse button to select a folder from the Output Path Setting dialog box or create a new path.
Output Error Report (Include Output PDF)	Check this to output a preflight report on errors as well as the PDF to the folder specified in Output Path if an error occurs. If an output PDF is being output, "Output PDF" must also be checked.

	Check this to output a nor Output Path. You can click Setting dialog box or crea same output path that is so report. Check this to output specified in Output Path.	mal report as well as the PDF to the folder specified in the Browse button to select a folder from the Output Path ate a new path. If you click the Same as PDF button, the et in Output Path is set as the output path for the normal ut a normal preflight report as well as the PDF to the folder
Report Type	Shows the type of report t	to be output.
	Preflight PDF Report	: Outputs only a Preflight report containing PitStop errors.
	Event Text Report	: Outputs a report containing the content of the event log.
	Both Reports	: Outputs both a Preflight PDF report and an event text report at the same time.
Note The event Details di	log that appears in the event te alog box.	xt report is the same as the [Results] report in the Event
Note The event Details di Note • Output - %n%N:I - %p,%P: If there is - %t, %T: Example: - %l%L: D	log that appears in the event te alog box. file macros Base file name (name of the imp Page number. more than one page, this is alwo Output time September 30th at 8:11:00 be ate and time of output (short form	xt report is the same as the [Results] report in the Event ort file without the extension) ays "PAGE1". comes "Sep30_20h11mOs". m)
Note The event Details di Note • Output - %n%N:I - %p,%P: If there is - %t, %T: • Example: - %l%L: D Example:	I log that appears in the event te alog box. file macros Base file name (name of the imp Page number. more than one page, this is alwo Output time September 30th at 8:11:00 be ate and time of output (short for September 30th at 8:11.00 pm	xt report is the same as the [Results] report in the Event ort file without the extension) ays "PAGE1". comes "Sep30_20h11m0s". m) n: "0930201100"

Other

The Other frame allows you to make blank plate auto detection settings.

Other
☑ Blank Plate Auto Detection
Rotate: 0 deg.
Treat as Generic PDF Outline PDF-Advance/OutlinePDF
Make the PDF best for the cache of RIP.

Select this setting if you want for the system to automatically delete and eliminate unnecessary plates on import files from output. This is only enabled when the import file is a composite PS file or a PDF file.
Allows you to specify the rotation angle of the input file when pages are assigned.
Select this check box to treat the input Outline PDF-Advance/OutlinePDF files as general PDF files and run various input processing functions. Normally leave this check box unselected because the prepress processing of these PDF files has already been completed. This check box should be used only when a PDF file needs to be modified.
Caches the parts to be reused so that the PDF is optimal for RIP processing. If this check box is selected, the input processing is a little slower, but the performance of the RIP processing improves. If this check box is not selected, the input processing is fast, but the RIP processing may be slow.

 TP-X is a QuarkXPress extension that imports document information that was specified in QuarkXPress into TotalFlow Simply Prepress. If you install TP-X in advance, you can match page origins automatically and pass document information to TotalFlow Simply Prepress. TP-X automatically activates this function when a file is imported into TotalFlow Simply Prepress. It is also possible to use the spot color specification function to separate colors used in QuarkXPress into process colors.

> When the Outline PDF-Advance/OutlinePDF check box is selected, even if Outline PDF is selected as an error under Treat as error when following files are input in the Error Check frame, the Outline PDF files are not treated as error but are treated as general PDF files.

• The Make the PDF best for the cache of RIP function is enabled only when data is output from the Truepress Jet series printers. It is disabled for other output processing, such as DotTIFF output and recorder output.



The Auto-trap function allows you to make settings for trapping.

Basic Setting

The Basic Setting frame allows you to set the trap width and trapping rules for spot colors and objects.

				Basic Se	tting		
Trap Wid	dth						
Basic:	0.06 mm	Black:	0.06 mm	Image:	0.06 mm	KickBack: 0.06 mm	
Text<	6 point	Trap:	0 mm				
Outline	Tint						
Object:	None		🗘 Wi	dth: 0 mm	E Fo	r images	
Pulac fo	er Spot Colors						
cules 10	Color Name		Pulos	Width			
	color Name		(ules	Width		Add	
						elete	
=		_					
Object R	Rules						
Object R Text to	Rules	None		÷	Include grad	lation in images	
Object R Text to Tint to i	Rules	None		•	Include grad	lation in images lation in images	

Trap Width	Allows you to se	Allows you to set trap widths.			
	Basic	: Allows you to enter a trap width for basic objects.			
	Black	 Allows you to enter a trap width for black objects (tints, text, strokes). The black objects for which this setting is made are objects whose K separation value is higher than the value set in Black Threshold Values for Black & Kickback in the Details dialog box, as well as other separations with a value lower than 5%. Setting the trap widths for Basic and Images to 0 mm and setting only the black width allows you to add traps to black objects alone. The setting range is 0.0mm to 100.0mm. (You can set up to one decimal place.) 			
	Images	: Allows you to enter a trap width for images.			

	Kickback	 Allows you to enter a value to set the trap width for objects with kickbacks (pullback width). Kickbacks are created when there are color objects including a K separation with a value of 95% or higher, as well as other separations with a value of 5% or higher. However, objects that include only a K separation with a value of 95% or higher, where all of the separations are 100% are excluded. You can modify the threshold value for the K separation to be kicked back with Black Threshold Values for Black & Kickback in the Details dialog box.
	Text	: Text that is smaller in point size than the value entered in the Text < field is trapped using the trap width set in the Trap field.
	Тгар	: Allows you to enter the trap width for text that is smaller in point size than the value entered in the Text < field
Outline Tint	Allows you to set u	p white outlines around text.
	None	: Select this if you do not want white outlines around text.
	Text	: Select this if you want white outlines around all text.
	Text (K 100)	: Select this if you want white outlines around all K = 100% black text only.
	Width	: Allows you to enter the width of the white outline. This is only active when you are placing white outlines around objects.
	For Images	: Check this to place white outlines around text that overlaps images.
Rules for Spot Colors	Allows you to set u is applied if the ob set for spot colors,	p the trapping rules for the spot colors you are using. This rule ject consists of one spot color. If Auto-trap rules have not been all of the rules are applied to the process colors.
	Color Name	: Shows the name of the spot color.
	Rules	: Allows you to select a trapping rule for the specified spot color from the drop-down list.
	Width	: Allows you to enter a trap width for the spot color.
	Add	: Click this to display the Color Name list. Select the spot color you want to trap (you can select more than one) and click Add to add the spot color to the Color Name list under Rules for Spot Colors.
	Delete	: Select a spot color displayed in the list and click Delete to remove the selected spot color from the list.
Object Rules	Allows you to set ru images and tints	ules for trapping between images and text and between (stroked objects).

Text to image	: Allows you to select a trapping rule from the pulldown list. When you check the Include gradation in images checkbox, the trapping conditions applied to images and text are also applied to gradients and text.
Tint to image	: Allows you to select a trapping rule from the pulldown list. When you check the Include gradation in images checkbox, the trapping conditions applied to images and tints are also applied to gradients and tints.
Upper image to lower image	: You can select None, Spread, Choke, Center, or Auto from the pulldown list as the direction of the traps between images and images.
Include gradation in images	: Check this checkbox to apply the selected rule to gradients and images (patterns).

Varnish separations (about the Transparent option in Rules for Spot Colors)

This trapping option is available so that it is possible to leave the varnish separation untrapped while trapping the objects below the varnish separation. If you do not select the Transparent option, the objects below the spot color separation are not trapped.

Object Rules

If you select Choke or Spread in Objects Rules and the Centerline Luminance Threshold option is turned on so that the objects over the images are trapped from the centerline, the object trapping rule will change to Centerline. This is to prevent jaggies in the trap objects.

Rules for objects that overlap images

This section describes the image rules for data containing an image (CMYK image) overprinted by text (M100%). Example)

- Data contains image (CMYK image) and text (M100%).
- Details frame settings: Both Do not trap if there is a shared separation with a screen percent higher than and Include images are unchecked.

• When Text to image is set to None

-No trap will be generated between the text and the image.





• When Text to image is set to Spread

→The text spreads onto the image.

This setting is suitable for data with a bright color text over a dark image. However, if a dark color text is placed on a bright image, the trap results will be undesirable.





• When Text to image is set to Choke

→The image is hidden under the text.

This setting is suitable for data with a dark color text over a bright image. However, if a bright color text is placed on a dark image, the trap results will be undesirable.





• When Text to image is set to Center

→Trap is generated having the outline for text as the center line (the line is displayed in green in the following example).

This setting should be used when it is difficult to specify a trap direction against the image.





• When Text to image is set to Auto

→This setting should be used when it is difficult to specify a trap direction against the image. When you select Auto, the trap direction is determined automatically according to the computation of the color on the edge of an image. In the figure below, the upper text is processed with Choke and the lower text is processed with Spread. However, the middle text is processed with both Choke and Spread because the difference of brightness between the text and image is slight.



As shown below, the processing with Auto chokes "t", "r", and "p" in the text and spreads "a", therefore the resulting text does not look consistent.

If this occurs, the trap direction for "a" must be corrected to Choke.

After the trapping with Auto, be sure to check the result and correct the trap direction as necessary.



Details

Details
- Restrictions for Trap
☑ Do not trap image masks
I Do not trap if there is a shared separation with a screen percent higher than
Tint: 45 % 🗹 Include images
Trap Threshold: C: 5 M: 5 Y: 5 K: 5
- Indeterminate Trapping Rules
✓ Text: 70 % ✓ Stroke: 70 % ☐ Tint: 70 %
- Other Rules
Trap-width/lipe-width ratio limit: 25 %
✓ Do not trap if the trap width is less than: 0.01 mm
Centerline Luminance Threshold: 20 %
□ Trap Color Reduction: C: 0 M: 0 Y: 0 K: 0
Black Threshold Values for Black & Kickback: 95 %

Do not trap image masks	Check this checkbox to skip trapping with image masks that take a long time to process. Normally, we recommend that you leave this checked. Traps are also not created for objects, other than image masks, comprised of paths containing 40,000 or more points.			
Do not trap if there is a shared separation with a screen percent higher than	If you check this checkbox, the separations used in the objects to be trapped are compared and the objects are not trapped if two objects share one or more separations with a value higher than the specified dot percentage.			
	Tint :	Allows you to enter a threshold (dot percentage) that determines the objects to be trapped. If the shared value is higher than the specified dot percentage, the two objects are determined as sharing separations even if the same separation is used by the two objects.		
	Include Images :	Check this to apply the threshold that determines the objects to be trapped to images as well. Note, however, that images and tint objects will not be trapped regardless of the threshold setting, even if they share a separation.		
Trap Threshold	Allows you to set threshold values for each of the CMYK separations to determi which objects will not be trapped. See "Trap Thresholds" under Note below for more information about setting threshold values.			
Indeterminate Trapping Rules	When you check this checkbox, if there is even one separation in the object trapped with a dot percentage over the threshold, indeterminate trapping is Set threshold values (dot percentages) for "Text", "Stroke" and "Tint".			

The Details frame allows you to set up trap restrictions and indeterminate trapping rules.

Trap-width/line-width ratio limit	If you are trapping stroked objects, enter a trap width threshold value if the objects do not have sufficient width with respect to the set trap width. The trap width becomes the "Maximum line width x entry value". This is only active if the checkbox is checked.
Do not trap if the trap width is less than	Check this to prevent trapping if the trap width is less than the specified value.
Centerline Luminance Threshold	Allows you to enter a standard for comparing the brightness ratios of the objects during trapping. If the ratio difference is lower than the value entered here, center trapping is used. This is only active if the checkbox is checked.
Trap Color Reduction	Trapped colors may appear darker because the colors of the trapped objects are merged. Use trap color reduction when it is necessary to control the trap colors. Check this checkbox to reduce the dot percentages in the trap colors using the values (%) set for each separation. See the Note below for more information.
Black Threshold Values for Black & Kickback	Allows you to enter a K separation threshold value that defines black. This sets the trap width for black objects. If you specify 95%, the trap width for black objects is applied to objects with a K separation of 95% or higher. This value is also applied to the K threshold value for kickback processing. In other words, kickbacks are created for objects that have a K separation of 95% or higher and another separation that is 5% or higher. The setting range is 0.0% to 100.0%. (You can set up to one decimal place.)

Determinate Trapping

TotalFlow Simply Prepress searches for overlapping objects and traps only those objects that are overlapping. The color of the trap object is the maximum blend for tints, stroked objects and text. The drawback to creating very fine traps is that processing takes a long time.

Indeterminate Trapping

TotalFlow Simply Prepress creates simple traps such as chokes and spreads around the objects to be trapped. Trapping is very fast. The trap color is an overprint blend. If light colors are given overprint priority, the colors below are reduced. As a result, if you use indeterminate trapping, only colors above the threshold value are hidden (colors below the threshold value are made 0% and overprinted).

Trap Thresholds

Trapping is not performed in the following cases.

- The halftone dot percentage difference for the area between the objects for all separations is less than the trapping threshold (i.e. areas with similar colors).

- The halftone dot percentage for all separations is less than the trapping threshold (i.e. areas with light colors). See the following examples.

Example 1: If the trapping threshold is set to 10%, the objects are not trapped because the Object 2 dot percentages are lower than the threshold.

Separation	С	М	Y	К
Tint % for Object 1	55	53	10	0
Tint % for Object 2	8	5	0	0

<u> </u>				
Separation	С	М	Y	К
Tint % for Object 1	55	53	10	0
Tint % for Object 2	48	50	8	0
Tint % Difference	7	3	2	0

Example 2: If the trapping threshold is set to 10%, the objects are not trapped because the differences between the tint percentages are lower than the threshold.

Trap Reduction

If the object to be trapped is a tint, text or stroked object and you are using determinate trapping, the hidden objects (lighter colors) are reduced and the trap is created with the maximum color blend. For example, if the reduction value for all separations is 40% (the coefficient is 100% - 40%), the reduction is made as shown below.

Separation	С	М	Y	К
Color 1 (Light Color: Hidden Objects)	0	20	50	0
Color 1 x Coefficient (60%)	0	12	30	0
Color 2 (Dark Color)	60	0	20	50
Trap Color	60	12	30	50

Options

The Options frame allows you to set kickback and spot color rule priorities as well as trap intersection shapes.

d(tints, stro	kes) and images.	
95	%	
90	%	
olor object	s overlap kickback objects.	
imit : 10		
	t(tints, stro 95 90 olor object	t(tints, strokes) and images. 95 % 90 % olor objects overlap kickback objects. mit : 10

Enable kickbacks on traps between white text (tints, strokes) and images.	Check this to create kickbacks for separations other than the K separation within images if there are objects on top of the images for which the C, M, Y, K and spot color separations are all 0%.
Black Threshold Value for Image Kickback	Allows you to enter a threshold value for the K separation for image kickbacks (the K separation pixels are left and the other separations are reduced). The setting range is 0.0% to 100.0%. (You can set up to one decimal place.)

Pixel Threshold Values for Image Kickback	Allows you to enter a percentage of pixels for areas where kickbacks will be created that is the same or greater than the value specified in Black Threshold Value for Image Kickback. If this percentage is the same or greater than the value specified in Pixels Threshold Value for Image Kickback, kickbacks are created. The setting range is 0.0% to 100.0%. (You can set up to one decimal place.)		
Kickback and Spot Color Rule Priorities	Allows you to select a priority order for kickback and spot color trapping rules.		
	Give priority to kickback rule.	Check this to use kickback rule.	
	Give priority to spot color rule when spot color objects overlap kickback objects.	Check this when spot color objects are placed over kickback objects and when generating traps using the spot color rule.	
	Give priority to spot color rule.	Check this when trapping spot color objects by using the spot color rule.	
Trap Intersection Shape	Allows you to select from Round, Beveled and Mitered for corner processing when trapping intersecting areas of objects such as lines. See Note below for more information.		

Kickback and Spot Color Rule Priorities



selected
The differences between Round, Beveled and Mitered trap shapes are illustrated below.



If you select Mitered, you must set a limit for how far the pointed angle extends out when the object is trapped. If the length of the mitered area is longer than the "trap width (line weight) x limit value" the corner will be cut off. The lower the limit, the less the angle is extended out. If you set "1" as the Miter Limit, the trap will be the same shape as if you had selected Beveled.



Point of the angle is not cut off.

Trap shape is beveled.

Speed and Quality

e Speed and Quality frame allows you to s	iei speed ulla d	found incontraction in appling.		
	Speed and G	Quality		
Trap Speed and Quality				
☐ Trap refers to overlaps of upper objects.				
Prevent jaggies in the trap objects				
Image Trap Composition:				
MAX Overprint				
Image Trap Resolution:				
 Apply the resolution of the object 				
O Assign Resolution: 72 dp	i			
Trap for Transparancy Trap mode for Transparency:	low'.(Mode1)			
O Create Traps on all transparent objects.(Mode2)			
The Number of sample points:	5	Resolution for getting the color:	500	dpi
The maximum number of relationship objects:	2000			
Settings for getting relationship objects				
Resolution: 100 dpi				
Locate Trap Object Choke & Spread Width: 0.	.006 mm			

Trap refers to overlaps of upper objects	Check this checkbox to reduc However, the trapping proce the amount of required comp	e the processing that creates unnecessary traps. ss may become long depending on the data, due to utation processing.
Prevent jaggies in the trap objects	Check this checkbox to correc background objects intersecti	ct trap objects along the edges when there are many ng on the diagonal so they look smooth.
Image Trap Composition	Allows you to set how to crea colored objects. See the follo	te composites for traps between images and wing for more information.
	МАХ	: Traps using the higher density color between the objects. This produces better results than Overprint, but trapping takes longer.
	Overprint	: Makes traps between images and colored objects by overprinting the colored objects.
Image Trap Resolution	Creates trap objects for image images for the trap objects. If trapping may become very lo 72 dpi is sufficient.	es using images. This option sets the resolution of the the resolution is high, the size of the PDF file after rge. If the trap width for the image is small enough,
	Apply the resolution of the object	: Creates the trap object using the same resolution as the image that is being trapped.
	Assign Resolution	: Creates the trap object using the resolution specified in the textbox. The input range is 40 dpi to 1000 dpi.
Trap mode for Transparency	Allows you to set a trapping r	node for transparent objects.

The Speed and Quality frame allows you to set speed and quality rules for trapping.

Create traps on objects affected by Drop Shadow. (Mode 1)	Check this checkbox to take dro trapping. Areas set with other tr	op shadows (blurs, shadows) into account when ansparency effects are not trapped.	
Create traps on all transparent objects. (Mode 2)	Traps all objects for which transparency effects are set (the trap width is the value set in Basic). Note that depending on the data, this may not be desirable from a design standpoint, so you must check the results. The trapping time also becomes longer. See the following settings for more information.		
	The number of sample points	: Allows you to specify the number of points used to calculate the color on the edge of a transparent object. You can set a value between 1 to 100 points.	
	Resolution for getting the color	: Allows you to specify the resolution used to calculate the color on the edge of a transparent object. The higher the resolution, the better the quality, but the trapping time becomes longer. You can set a value between 72 to 2400 dpi.	
	The maximum number of relationship objects	 If the total number of objects that are located on top of transparent objects as well as surrounded by transparent objects exceeds the value set here, those transparent objects are not trapped. The input range is 0 to 9999. 	
Settings for getting relationship objects	Allows you to set the resolution	and the choke / spread width for related objects.	
Resolution	Allows you to specify the resolu trapping. You can set a value b text and objects are not trapped finer value (400 dpi or higher).	tion for calculating the related objects for etween 72 to 2400 dpi. However, if some small d, we recommend changing the resolution to a	
Locate Trap Object / Choke & Spread Width	Use this if objects are not trappo objects. It chokes or spreads the locates the trap objects. You ca up to five decimal places.	ed because there are tiny gaps between the e objects according to the value you enter and n set a value between -0.01 and 0.01 mm, using	

Trap refer to overlaps of upper objects

Processing is performed as shown below when the Trap refers to overlaps of upper objects option is turned on. As shown in Figure A, if multiple objects, including knocked-out objects, overlap each other, there are times when unwanted trap objects are generated (Figure B). Check this checkbox to prevent unwanted trap objects from being generated.



Maximum blend and overprint blend for images and color objects

[Result of maximum blend]

An image and color object are blended with MAX selected and the blended image is trapped. Blending is performed based on the higher density color between the image and color object. This produces better results than Overprint.



Blended area (MAX)

[Result of overprint blend]

When objects are blended with Overprint selected, a color object overprints an image and the blended image is trapped.

As shown in the figure below, the area in which the image and color object overlap may appear lighter, because the image color is covered by the color of the overprint color object.



Blended area (MAX)

Image trap resolution rules

• When the Apply the resolution of the object radio button is turned on



Result with Apply the resolution of the object selected (maximum blend)

• When resolution is entered for Assign Resolution



Result with Assign Resolution set to 72 dpi (maximum blend), trap width: 3 mm

When images with different resolutions are trapped, a lower resolution is used.

About locating trap objects

Trap objects are computed and located by picking out the parts of objects in the page file that are abutting. If there is even a tiny space between neighboring objects, there is no abutting area so no trap object is located. When you want to trap these types of objects, the Locate Trap Object option temporarily spreads abutting objects before locating trap objects so they will abut and their trap objects can be located.



There are two ways to locate trap objects. You can enter either a positive or a negative number into the Locate Trap Object option field.

This is described using the example of abutting objects shown below.

In this example, A is the foreground trap object and B is the background trap object.



If you enter a positive number into the Locate Trap Object option field, object A is spread only by the value entered in order to locate the trap object, which is the hatched area in the figure below.

The dotted line in the figure above shows how object A was spread.

The trap direction is A over B.



In contrast, if you enter a negative number into the Locate Trap Object option field, object B is spread only by the value entered and the trap object is located as the object in the hatched area in the figure below.

The dotted lines in the figure above show how background object B was spread. The trap direction is A over B.



The dotted lines in the figure above show how background object B was spread. The trap direction is A over B.

Output Folder Name Macros

When you output a file, you can use combined macros for specifying the output folder name. Using macros allows you to include variable information for each job or processing in the file name without changing the ticket.

The following macros can be used for output folders. These macros are common to each output processing, and a macro can be used in combination with another one.

%j, %J	Job name and section name Allows you to set whether or not to include the section name for the system setting.
%b, %B	Job ID (order code)

Output File Name Macros

For each file output, a macro can be included in the instructions regarding the output file name. By using the macros, the information variable for each job and processing can be included in the file name without changing the ticket.

The macros available for output file names are shown below. These macros are common for all output processes and you can combine them for use.

%n, %N	Input file name (excluding extensions) For signature output, the name of the file placed lowest is used (excluding accessories).
%j, %J	Job name and section name Allows you to set whether or not to include the section name for the system setting.
%o, %O	Signature number Example: First signature: "FOLD1" 25th signature: "FOLD25" If there are multiple signatures, these are replaced by "FOLDn".
%f, %F	Front is replaced by "FRONT" and Back is replaced by "BACK".
%p, %P	Page number Example: First page: "PAGE1" 142nd page: "PAGE142" For fold output, the lowest page number will be assigned.
%p+, %P+	Folio marks These will be replaced by the folio marks that have been set for each page.
%t, %T	Output time Example: September 30th at 8:11:00 becomes "Sep30_20h11m0s".
%l, %L	Output time (short form) Example: September 30th at 8:11:00 becomes "0930201100".
%c, %C	Consecutive numbers A serial number is added to the computation execution time, so the format becomes "MonthDay - Serial Number". Example, if the date is September 30th and this is the fifth computation within the job being processed, the number becomes "0930-0005".
%w, %W	JDF-JOB/PJTF input file name (excluding extensions)
%b, %B	Job ID (order code)

Note	For %p and %P macros, the expansion result varies depending on the processing in which the
	macro is used.
	- For file registration (input processing): PDF page numbers
	- For page proof: Page numbers with respect to the entire job
	- For output workflow: Page numbers in the section
	The output workflow indicates all workflows that are set in the section.
	- For JDF-JOBin: In accordance with the workflow used for creating the JDF-JOB
	When JDF-JOB output has been set in the page proof workflow, the macros are expanded to the page numbers with respect to the entire job. However, when JDF-JOB output has been set in the output workflow, the macros are expanded to the page numbers in the section.

OutlinePDF-Advance 👪

OutlinePDF-Advance is a plug-in that converts imported files to OutlinePDF-Advance files.

Basic Setting

The Basic Setting frame allows you to make settings such as the output file name and compression mode.

File Name	Allows you to specify a name for the file to be output. You can directly enter the file name or select a combination of the macros from the pull-down list. You can also use the macros when you directly enter the file name. For more information, see "Output File Name Macros".
Output Path	Allows you to specify the path where the output file is saved. Enter the path directly, or click Browse to select a folder from the Output Path List dialog box. You can add a new folder by clicking the New button to display the Add New Folder dialog box.
Image Compression Type	Allows you to set the compression mode when compressing images. You can select Keep Compression Type, JPEG or ZIP. If you select Keep Compression Type, the PDF file is created using the same image compression mode that was used in the input PDF. It is also possible to use macros. For more information, see "Output Folder Name Macros".
JPEG	Allows you to set the image compression quality if you select JPEG as the image compression mode. The higher the image quality, the lower the amount of compression, and the lower the image quality, the higher the amount of compression.
Preview	Allows you to specify whether or not to attach a preview file to the output PDF. To attach a preview file, check this checkbox and specify a resolution in Preview Image Resolution.

Finish

The Finish frame allows you to make output area and register mark settings. Finish Half(Upper & Lower) Output Area: Plate Imposition -Divide type: A Y Split Output: OFF • Overlap Margin: 6 mm Print frames Paper Size Imposed Layout Page Layout 0 deg. \$ Rotate Scale W: 100 % x H: 100 % Output Area Allows you to select the output area of the imposition. : Outputs an area that includes the finished area and Film Imposition the prepress margins. Make these settings in the Basic Setting tab in the Edit Template dialog box. Plate Imposition : Outputs the entire plate area. Make these settings in the Plate Setting tab in the Edit Template dialog box. **Divided Imposition** : Divides output. Make these settings using Divide of Fold Catalog Editor. **Division** Type Half (Upper & Lower) : Divides the output area into two sections (upper and lower) using the dividing line specified in the fold catalog. Half (Left & Right) : Divides the output area into two sections (left and right) using the dividing line specified in the fold catalog. Quarter : Divides the output area into four sections using the dividing lines specified in the fold catalog. Split Output Evenly divides the specified output area in TotalFlow Simply Prepress for output. None : Outputs without tiling. Tile horizontally (top & : Divides the output into top and bottom tiles for output. bottom) Tile vertically (left & : Divides the output into left and right tiles for output. right) Tile horizontally and : Divides the output into top, bottom, left and right tiles vertically for output. Overlap Allows you to enter an overlap width for tiling output, while placing the dividing

line at the center of this width.

Print frames	See the	"About Print fram	es" note under "DotTIFF-Finish" for more information.
	Paper Si	ze	: Check this to output a paper area frame. You can set this when Plate Imposition is selected in Output Area.
	Imposed	Layout	: Check this to output frames around the imposition area and the object bleed area.
	Page Lay	yout	: Check this to output frames around the page area and the object bleed area.
Rotate	Allows y Output A	ou to set the ang Area field. It is rot	le of rotation for the film or plate area selected in the ated counterclockwise by the degree set here.
Scale	Allows y vertical o	ou to enter a sca direction (V).	ling percentage in the horizontal direction (H) and the
Important	The divide positions (upp state of a fold catalog be positioned after being ro the left or right positions positions.	per, lower, left, ing positioned tated 90 or 270 and the left and	and right) for divided output are based on the on a flat. Note that when the fold catalog is) degrees, the upper and lower positions become I right positions become the upper or lower
Note	File names for divided outp If "ABC" is entered as the o the following file names app - "ABC_00.pdf" (Bottom let - "ABC_01.pdf" (Top left) - "ABC_10.pdf" (Bottom rig - "ABC_11.pdf" (Top right)	ut utput file name a pear on the front ft) ght)	nd the signature is set to be divided into four sections, side output.

Color Management

		Color Management
	Embed ICC profile	
	Embed ICC profile	Check this checkbox if you want to embed an output intent profile for file output.
ор	tions	
	The finish frame allows you	u to make bleed settings.

	Output Option
Stroke Outline Disable	
Stroke Outline	If you output a PDF file, line segments are converted to outlines for output.

Output

Option

	Option	
Binding -		
File Name	Merge_%n	•
Output Path:	\\localhost\general\output\MergedPDF	Browse
	Output individual files	

Binding	Check this so that the OutlinePDF-Advance files are merged and converted to a multi-page PDF file. This function is used when POD connection is performed.	
File Name	Allows you to specify a name for the file to be output. You can directly enter the file name or select a combination of the macros from the pull-down list. You can also use the macros when you directly enter the file name. For more information, see "Output File Name Macros".	
Output Path	Allows you to specify the path where the output multi-page PDF file is saved. Enter the path directly or click the Browse button to select the save folder from the Output Path Setting dialog box. Click the New button to add a new folder in the Add New Folder dialog box.	
Output individual files	Check this to output the OutlinePDF-Advance files before they are bound. The files are output according to the File Name and Output Path settings that have been made in the Basic Settings menu.	

Important	 Points to note about the Binding function (for all operations) The maximum size of a multi-page PDF file is 2 G Byte. With the default setting, the file is divided when its size exceeds approximately 1.3 G Byte. If an output error in a single-page OutlinePDF-Advance file occurs, the files cannot be merged. Tickets cannot be saved with the Biding checkbox checked under the following conditions.
	 When Halt (Upper&Lower), Halt (Lett&Right) or Quarter is selected for Split output in the Finish frame
	 Points to note about the Binding function (for OutlinePDF-Advance)
	 A multi-page PDF file is output as a OutlinePDF-Advance file.

8. POD Link

Direct output commands can be sent to RICOH production printers. This chapter describes preparation and operations. With TotalFlow Simply Prepress, communication is performed in Connectivity mode using TotalFlow Print Server R61/R61A and JDF/JMF, but when PDF RIP Enhanced by SCREEN Type S is used, communication is performed in Native connection mode which maximizes image quality performance.

Preparation

To send an output command, a printer must be registered to TotalFlow Simply Prepress. Use the PrinterAdminTool on the TotalFlow Simply Prepress server to register a printer.

Important Advance settings may be required on the printer side. Perform necessary settings in accordance with the printer's specifications.

- Network connection settings and JDF interface settings
- Device information settings in accordance with printer options
- Paper settings, etc.

Register

- **Operation** 1. Stop the TotalFlow Simply Prepress server service in advance.
 - 2. From the Windows Start menu, select Maintenance Tool PrinterAdmin Tool.

PrinterAdminTool	_ □ ×
	Register
	Modify IP
	Delete
	Update
	Properties
	Close

Register

Allows you to register a new printer.

Modify IP

Allows you to change the IP address of a registered printer. Enter a new IP address in the dialog box displayed. Change IP Address



Update printers that have the same IP address: When multiple printers having the same IP address have been registered, selecting this check box changes the IP address of all printers at the same time.

Delete	Deletes a registered printer.
Update	Updates information of registered printers. Use this button when the printer configuration is changed. Select relevant printers from the list and then click this button.

Properties Displays the information of a registered printer.

Close

Close the PrinterAdminTool.

3. After starting up the tool, click the Register button.

When the window to register a new printer is displayed, enter the IP address of the printer to be connected and then click the Search button.

Register New Printers	x
Enter the host name or the IP address of the device controller.	
	¥
Search	

4. The printer search window is displayed. Then, a list of printers that can be registered is displayed. Select a printer to register from the printer list, and then click the Register button.

iv	
Register New Printers	x
Enter the host name or the IP address of the device contro	oller.
133.224.48.118	~
Se	arch
Please select a printer to register.	
	^
	=
Register Properties Cl	.ose

Important If a search fails, the following message will be displayed. Check the entered IP address, and also check that the printer and TotalFlow Simply Prepress are both connected to the network.



5. When the printer name entry window is displayed, enter any printer name and then click the OK button.



6. The registration is completed when the following window is displayed. Click the OK button.



7. This completes the registration of the printer. Close the PrinterAdminTool and start the TotalFlow Simply Prepress service.

Important	The ICC profiles need to be registered to TotalFlow Print Server R61/61A to use Connectivity mode.
	 Copy the following profiles from the designated folder on the server. Folder path: \{{TotalFlow Simply Prepress server host name}\PrefColorICC Profiles: AdobeCMYK.icm DS_EURO2 Std 175SQR.icm DS_JapanColor2001type1 V1.icc DS_JapanColor2001type2 V1.icc DS_JapanColor2001type2 V2.icc DS_JapanColor2001type3 V1.icc DS_JapanColor2001type3 V1.icc DS_JapanColor2001type3 V2.icc DS_JapanColor2001type4 V1.icc DS_JapanColor2001type4 V2.icc DS_JapanColor2001type4 V2.icc DS_JAPANnew HiMK 175SQ.icm DS_JMPA Color V1.icc DS_SWOP2 Std 175SQR.icm Delete any " (null character) that is included in each file name. Install the files of (2) above as the CMYK input profiles of TotalFlow Print Server R61/61A.
Note	If the printer was registered in Native connection mode, it is indicated as "(Type-S)" in "System/model:" of the properties.
Note	The following peripherals are supported with TotalFlow Simply Prepress.
	[RICOH Pro C9100/9110] Vacuum Feed LCIT RT5100 Vacuum Feed Banner Sheet Tray Type S3 Multi Bypass Tray BY5010 Multi Bypass Banner Sheet Tray Type S3 High Capacity Stacker SK5030 Cover Interposer Tray CI5030 Finisher SR5050 Booklet Finisher SR5060 Punch Unit PU5020 Trimmer Unit TR5040
	[RICOH Pro C7100S/7110S/7110] LCIT RT5090 Multi Bypass Tray BY5010 Multi Bypass Banner Sheet Tray Type S3 Vacuum Feed LCIT RT5100 Vacuum Feed LCIT RT5100 High Capacity Stacker SK5030 Cover Interposer Tray Cl5030 Finisher SR5050 Booklet Finisher SR5060 Punch Unit PU5020

Workflow setting procedure in the Action Plan window

The following describes the procedure for performing an output operation using a registered printer. This procedure must be performed on the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client.

00		Sar	npleJob (Section Auto	-Switching:Invalid)				
Action Plan >	Register Fi	e 🕨 🙀 Input 🕨	Page Assign 🕨 🎽	Output			1	
SampleJob Co	tal Page Number lor Profile:DS_Ja	:32 Auto Page Assigr panColor2001 type2-1	:Valid Auto-BackUp:In MatCoated V2 Prior out	nvalid Automatic Deletio put intent:OFF	n:Invalid	20	Save	Cancel
Input	Outp	ut	_	_	_	_	_	
æ	<i>₽</i>	Û						
Q ¢	Page Bind Bind Outp	New Sectio n Count-32 Size:44 Verti ing Side:Left ut Color						

Operation

2. When the New Output Workflow window is displayed, select a printer to be used and then click the New button.

00	SampleJob (Section Auto-Switching:Invalid)		
💱 Action Plan 🕨 🚺 Regis	ster File 🕨 🚭 Input 🕨 🕎 Page Assign 🕨 🥸 Output	III (III)	
input (Auto-Bage Assign Valid Auto-Back By Invalid Automatic Detection invalid New Ourput Workflow Workflow Type: Output :: OutinePDF-Advance I 92.168.24.1-1 192.168.24.1-2 Inport New Cancel	X E @ Save	Cancel

3. When the window to create a new workflow is displayed, perform the necessary settings. After this, click the Save button.

For more information about the settings, see "POD workflow setting window" in this chapter.

	$\Theta \cap \Theta$		New Section – Output
9	Printer Information Update		Save Cancel
	Output Color Setting 🔹	Printer Name:	192.168.24.1-1 ÷ ncel
Input	192.168.24.1-1 🛞	Printer Model:	Pro C71105 JPN R-61A
æ	Print Processing Ticket	Copies:	The copies of a job are interlocked with.
		Printing side:	Both sides (2 sided) +
		Paper:	Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed]
59		Operation of print JOB:	Print \$
		Store of Print job:	Store indefinitely
		▼ Printer Color Setting	
		Color:	Color ‡
		ICC profile for front side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss \$
			Make the back side the same
		ICC profile for back side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss
		Rendering intent:	Perceptual ‡
			Quality Priority
		Conversion option:	
	1000		

4. Select or create an imposition scheme.

Click the imposition scheme icon to perform the imposition scheme settings. For more information, see "Job" in Chapter 4.

O O Imposition				
Type: Normal 🛟	Cancel			
Edit				
Simple Edit				
Import				
Export				

POD workflow setting window

Window layout

The POD workflow setting window consists of the Printing Conditions window, Print Processing Ticket window, and

000		New Section – Output	
Printer Information Update			Save Cancel
Output Color Setting Printing Conditions 192.168.24.1-1 Print Processing Ticket	Printer Name: Printer Model: Copies: Printing side: Paper: Operation of print JOB: Store of Print job: ♥ Printer Color Setting	192.168.24.1-1 ‡ Pro C7110S JPN R-61A Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are interlocked Image: Complex of a job are inter	l with.
	Color: ICC profile for front side:	Color ÷ Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss ÷ ✓ Make the back side the same	
	Rendering intent:	Perceptual 💠	
	Conversion option:		

Printer Information Update	Retrieves the information for the selected printer. Items listed below are then updated. • Paper • ICC profile for front side, ICC profile for back side • Halftone screening	
Save	Saves the workflow settings.	
Cancel	Closes the window without applying the changed settings.	
Printing Conditions	Allows you to set the printer's printing conditions and color settings.	
Printing Processing Ticket	Allows you to set the OutlinePDF-Advance output parameters and the printer's detailed parameters. This window contains the OutlinePDF-Advance and POD tabs.	

Printing conditions

00		New Section – Output
Printer Information Update		Save Cancel
Output Color Setting 🛞	Printer Name:	192.168.24.1-1 🗘
Printing Conditions	Printer Model:	Pro C7110S JPN R-61A
Print Processing Ticket	Copies:	The copies of a job are interlocked with.
	Printing side:	Both sides (2 sided)
	Paper:	Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed]
	Operation of print JOB:	Print 🗘

Set the printer's printing conditions and color settings.

	Store of Print job:	Store indefinitely
	▼ Printer Color Setting	
	Color:	Color ‡
	ICC profile for front side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss
		☑ Make the back side the same
	Rendering intent:	Perceptual
		Quality Priority
	Conversion option:	
Printer Name		Shows the selected printer name.
Printer Model		Shows the model name of the selected printer.
Copies		Allows you to enter the number of copies to print.
The copies of a j	ob are	Select this check box to use the number of copies specified in Basic Setti

Copies	Allows you to enter the	Allows you to enter the number of copies to print.		
The copies of a job are interlocked with.	Select this check box t job.	Select this check box to use the number of copies specified in Basic Setting for the job.		
Printing side	Printing side Allows you to select the print side of the she			
	Both sides (2 sided)	: Prints on both sides of the sheet.		
	Front side(1 sided)	: Prints only on the front side of the sheet.		
	Back side(1 sided)	: Prints only on the back side of the sheet.		
Paper	Allows you to select th displayed using the fo Format: Tray name [po	Allows you to select the name of the paper to be used. The paper names are displayed using the following format. Format: Tray name [paper name, paper size, feed direction]		
Operation of print JOB	Allows you to set the c	Allows you to set the operation of the print job registered to the printer.		
	Print	: Starts printing.		
	After sample print, suspend	: Prints one copy only, and then stops printing temporarily.		
	Suspend	: Stops printing temporarily.		
Store of Print job	Allows you to set whet	her or not to save a print job after printing is completed.		
	Off	: The job is deleted after it is printed.		
	Store indefinitely	: The job is not deleted but saved after it is printed.		

	Store for	: The job is saved for a specified period (date and time).		
Color	Allows you to select the output color conversion. Select either Color or Gray.			
ICC profile for front side	Allows you to select ar side.	Allows you to select an ICC profile to be used for color conversion of the front side.		
	Make the back side the same	 When this check box is not selected, you can select a separate ICC profile for color conversion of the back side. 		
	ICC profile for front side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss 🗧		
		Make the back side the same		
	ICC profile for back side:	Pro C7100Sseries R-60A Gloss		
Rendering intent	Allows you to select a rendering intent is defir	rendering intent from the pulldown list. In general, each ned as follows.		
	Default	: Converts colors with the intent specified in the document. If no intent is specified, conversion is made using relative matching.		
	Perceptual	: Converts colors as close as possible to their original colors without changing the lightness (L value) so that the visual perception of each color is maintained. If the color space for the output device is narrow, colors must be reproduced within the narrow color space, therefore all colors are replaced. Although this color matching method requires all colors to be replaced, it rarely causes tone jumps. For this reason, this method is suitable for the conversion of photo images that include many out-of-gamut colors.		
	Saturation	: Converts colors as close as possible to their original colors using enhanced lightness (L value) to maintain saturation of colors rather than to reproduce the colors accurately. This method is suitable for the conversion of data that requires bright color tones. It is typically used for charts and tables for business use.		
	RelativeColorimetric	: Use this option to maintain a relative color gamut of each color. The input profile color gamut and the output profile color gamut are compared and then the color conversion is performed according to the resulting difference ratios. When the colors are outside the color gamut of the output profile, these colors are converted to the possible proximate colors in the output profile.		
	AbsoluteColorimetric	: Leaves the colors in the output profile color gamut unchanged. An out-of-gamut color is converted to a color that has the same color tone and is located on the outmost border of the color space. This method is useful when colors must be reproduced accurately. However, when the output profile color gamut is narrower than the input profile color gamut, the colors that are located outside the color gamut and have the same color tones are displayed as the same color.		

Quality Priority	/	Select this to perform processing with priority given to the accuracy of output color conversion. Note, however, the processing time is longer.
Conversion op	otion	Select an option from the pulldown list. The options include Keep paper color, Keep primary color, Keep black 100% after conversion, and Keep pure black color. You can select multiple options. The selected option icon will be displayed in the window. For more information, see "Chapter 11 Color Management Parameter List."
Note	Only Keep black 1 mode.	00% after conversion can be selected for Conversion option in the Connectivity

OutlinePDF-Advance (output processing ticket)

Basic Setting

The Basic Setting frame allows you to make settings such as the output file name and compression mode.

Basic Setting		
File Name:	%n	•
Output Path:	\\localhost\general\output	Browse
Image Compression Type:	Keep Compression Type	
JPEG:	Standard \$	
Preview Preview	: 72 dpi	

File Name	Allows you to specify a name for the file to be output. You can directly enter the file name or select a combination of the macros from the pull-down list. You can also use the macros when you directly enter the file name. For more information, see "Output File Name Macros".
Output Path	Allows you to specify the path where the output file is saved. Enter the path directly, or click Browse to select a folder from the Output Path List dialog box. You can add a new folder by clicking the New button to display the Add New Folder dialog box.
Image Compression Type	Allows you to set the compression mode when compressing images. You can select Keep Compression Type, JPEG or ZIP. If you select Keep Compression Type, the PDF file is created using the same image compression mode that was used in the input PDF. It is also possible to use macros. For more information, see "Output Folder Name Macros".
JPEG	Allows you to set the image compression quality if you select JPEG as the image compression mode. The higher the image quality, the lower the amount of compression, and the lower the image quality, the higher the amount of compression.
Preview	Allows you to specify whether or not to attach a preview file to the output PDF. To attach a preview file, check this checkbox and specify a resolution in Preview Image Resolution.

Finish

The Finish frame allows you to make output area and register mark settings.

Finish
Output Area: Media Divide type: Half(Upper & Lower)
Split Output: OFF Overlap Margin: 6 mm
Print frames Paper Size Imposed Layout Page Layout
Rotate: 0 deg. \$
Scale: W: 100 % x H: 100 %

Output Area	Allows you to select the output area of the imposition.		
	Fold Layout	: Outputs an area that includes the finished area and the prepress margins. Make these settings in the Basic Setting tab in the Edit Template dialog box.	
	Media	: Outputs the entire media area.	
	Divided Imposition	: Divides output. Make these settings using Divide of Fold Catalog Editor.	
Division Type	Half (Upper & Lower)	: Divides the output area into two sections (upper and lower) using the dividing line specified in the fold catalog.	
	Half (Left & Right)	: Divides the output area into two sections (left and right) using the dividing line specified in the fold catalog.	
	Quarter	: Divides the output area into four sections using the dividing lines specified in the fold catalog.	
Split Output	Evenly divides the specif	ied output area in TotalFlow Simply Prepress for output.	
	None	: Outputs without tiling.	
	Tile horizontally (top & bottom)	: Divides the output into top and bottom tiles for output.	
	Tile vertically (left & right)	: Divides the output into left and right tiles for output.	
	Tile horizontally and vertically	: Divides the output into top, bottom, left and right tiles for output.	
Overlap	Allows you to enter an overlap width for tiling output, while placing the dividing line at the center of this width.		

Print frames	nes See the "About Print frames" note under "DotTIFF-Finish" for more infor		e under "DotTIFF-Finish" for more information.
	Paper Size	: Chec this v	:k this to output a paper area frame. You can set vhen Media is selected in Output Area.
	Imposed Lo	yout : Chec area	k this to output frames around the imposition and the object bleed area.
	Page Layou	ut : Chec and	k this to output frames around the page area he object bleed area.
Rotate	Allows you Output Are	to set the angle of rot a field. It is rotated co	ation for the film or plate area selected in the unterclockwise by the degree set here.
Scale	Allows you vertical dire	Allows you to enter a scaling percentage in the horizontal direction (H) and the vertical direction (V).	
Important	The divide positions (upper, state of a fold catalog being positioned after being rotat the left or right positions an positions.	, lower, left, and rig g positioned on a flo ed 90 or 270 degre d the left and right	ht) for divided output are based on the at. Note that when the fold catalog is ses, the upper and lower positions become positions become the upper or lower
Note	File names for divided output If "ABC" is entered as the output the following file names apped - "ABC_00.pdf" (Bottom left) - "ABC_01.pdf" (Top left) - "ABC_10.pdf" (Bottom right - "ABC_11.pdf" (Top right)	out file name and the s ar on the front side ou	ignature is set to be divided into four sections, put.

Output options

The finish frame allows you to make bleed settings.

Output Option		
Stroke Outline	Disable	•

Stroke Outline

If you output a PDF file, line segments are converted to outlines for output.

Option

Option			
_			
File Name	Merge_%n 🔻		
Output Path:	\\localhost\general\output\MergedPDF Browse		
	Output individual files		
L			

BindingCheck this so that the OutlinePDF-Advance files are merged and converted to a
multi-page PDF file. This function is used when POD connection is performed.

File Name	Allows you to specify a name for the file to be output. You can directly enter the file name or select a combination of the macros from the pull-down list. You can also use the macros when you directly enter the file name. For more information, see "Output File Name Macros".
Output Path	Allows you to specify the path where the output multi-page PDF file is saved. Enter the path directly or click the Browse button to select the save folder from the Output Path Setting dialog box. Click the New button to add a new folder in the Add New Folder dialog box.
Output individual files	Check this to output the OutlinePDF-Advance files before they are bound. The files are output according to the File Name and Output Path settings that have been made in the Basic Settings menu.
Important • Point: • The m divide • If an a merg • Ticket condi - Wh • Wh • Wh • the • A mu	is to note about the Binding function (for all operations) maximum size of a multi-page PDF file is 2 GByte. With the default setting, the file is ed when its size exceeds approximately 1.3 GByte. Doutput error in a single-page OutlinePDF-Advance file occurs, the files cannot be ed. is cannot be saved with the Biding checkbox checked under the following tions. en Divided Imposition is selected for Output Area in the Finish frame en Half (Upper&Lower), Half (Left&Right) or Quarter is selected for Split output in Finish frame is to note about the Binding function (for OutlinePDF-Advance) Iti-page PDF file is output as a OutlinePDF-Advance file.

POD (output processing ticket)

Configure the settings on the printer side. Some items may not be displayed depending on the model used and configuration of peripherals. See the manual for the model used.

Printer Information

Printer Information			
Printer Name: 192.168.24.1-1	\$		
Printer Model: Pro C7110S JPN R-61A			
Printer Name	Shows the selected printer name.		
Printer Model	Shows the model name of the selected printer.		

Finishing

	Finishing
Binding edge:	Left ‡
Staple/Bind:	Off ‡
Punch:	Off \$
	Fold type: Off +
Output tray:	Finisher shift tray 🗘
Collate:	Off \$
Eject output:	Face-down \$

Binding edge	Allows you to specify the binding position. Select Left, Right, or Top.		
Staple/Bind	Allows you to perform the staple setting. Select Off, 1-staple, slant, 1-staple, horizontal, 1-staple, vertical, 2-staple, or 2-staple at center.		
Position	Allows you to select a staple position. This setting item is displayed when 1-staple is selected. The selectable position varies depending on the binding position. Staple/Bind: 1-staple Position: Top + When the binding position is on the left or right: Top, Bottom When the binding position is on the top: Left, Right		
Adding cover sheet	Allows you to select whether or not to add a cover. This setting item is displayed when 2-staple at center is selected. When this check box is selected, Paper becomes selectable. The book block will be wrapped in the selected paper. Staple/Bind: 2-staple at center		
Trim	Allows you to specify the cutting method. This setting item is displayed when 2-staple at center is selected. Staple/Bind: 2-staple at center Adding cover sheet Trim: Off Fold type: Half fold * Fold sheets together		
	Off : Cutting is not performed.		
	Fore edge by amount: Allows you to specify the cutting distance from the front edge side. The edge side is the opposite side to the binding side. In the front edge side field, enter any value up to the maximum value processable on the device.		
Fold type	Allows you to specify the folding method. Selectability of folding method depends on staple setting. When a staple setting is Off, select either Off or Half fold. Also, the Fold sheets together check box becomes selectable. When the staple setting is 2-staple at center, the method is fixed to Half fold.		
Output tray	Allows you to specify a paper discharge tray. When Half fold is selected for Fold type, the setting is fixed to Trimmer tray.		
Punch	Allows you to set for punching holes.		

	Off	: Punched holes will not be created.
	2 Holes	: The printer will make two punched holes.
Collate	Allows you to specify a sorting method during paper discharge. Select Not sort, Sort/Shift sort, Collate, or Stack.	
Eject output	Allows you to specify the paper discharge order and front/back side setting. Select Face-up, Face-down, Face-up, reverse order, or Face-down, reverse order.	

Printing Quality

Printing Quality			
Halftone screening:	200Dot	\$	
✓ Import DTP Overprint Information			
Automatic Overprint Configuration:	None	•	
Color Synthesis Overprint Simulation			
Line Width Adjustment:	On	•	
Edge enhancement:	Off	\$	
Thinning/Outline enhancement:	Off	•	

Halftone screening	Allows you to select a screening setting. Select one of the screening sets created on the printer.		
BlackOverPrint	Select this if you want the system to automatically overprint K = 100% tints and K = 100% text in the file to be imported.		
DTP Overprint Information	Select this check box to load overprints.		
Automatic Overprint Configuration	Specifies what is to be overprinted automatically during output.		
	None	: Select this if you do not want the system to automatically apply overprinting.	
	Tint & Text	: Select this if you want the system to automatically overprint K = 100% tints and K = 100% text in the file to be imported.	
	Text	: Select this if you want the system to automatically overprint K = 100% text in the file to be imported.	
Color Synthesis Overprint Simulation	Select this check box to render overprints even after performing an ICC conversion or after converting spot colors to simulated colors.		
Line Width Adjustment	When On is selected, the thickness of the stroke is adjusted so that it is even.		
Use maximum density	Allows you to specify whether or not to apply the maximum density to either CMYK or black only.		
	Off	: The calibrated values specified in the printer will be used.	
	For K only	: 100% black (K) will be printed at the maximum density, regardless of the printer calibration.	

	СМҮК	: 100% colors (C, M, Y, K) will be printed at the maximum densities, regardless of the printer calibration.
Edge enhancement	Allows you to specify whether or not to enhance the text and line art edges by removing jagged lines. When On is selected, the edges will be enhanced during printing.	
Thinning/Outline enhancement	Allows you to specify whether or not to enhance thin lines in text and line art. When On is selected, thin lines will be enhanced.	

Important	When Automatic Overprint Configuration is used for a job for which Use Target ICC has been selected in Section Setting, select the Color Synthesis Overprint Simulation check box.
Note	The following items can be set on RICOH Pro C9110/C9100 only. • Edge enhancement • Thinning/Outline enhancement BlackOverPrint can be set in Connectivity mode only.

Output Option

Output Option			
Banner Page: Off +			
Please input text to print on Banner Page			
Insert job separator sheet			
Paper: Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed] +			
Insert copy separator sheet			
Paper: Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed] +	Separator Amount: 1		
Insert slip sheet			
Paper: Tray-1[A4LEF,210.0 x 297.0 mm,LongEdgeFeed] +	Printing		

Banner Page	Allows you to specify the contents and printing position of the banner page. Enter the contents to be printed in the text area.		
	Off	: The banner page is not output.	
	Before and after job	: The banner page is printed before and after the job.	
	Before job	: The banner page is printed before the job.	
Insert job separator sheet	When this check box is selected, job separator sheets will be inserted.		
	Paper	: Allows you to select the paper used for separator sheets.	
Insert copy separator sheet	When this check box is selected, copy separator sheets will be inserted.		

	Paper	: Allows you to select the paper used for separator			
	Separator Amount	: A separator sheet is inserted between copies at			
Insert slip sheet	When this check box	specified intervals. selected, slip sheets will be inserted.			
,	Paper	: Allows you to select the paper used for slip sheets.			
	Printing	: When this check box is selected, a copy of the previous page will be inserted.			

Toner

	Toner
Toner/Ink Limit:	Not set \$
Toner/Ink Limit	Allows you to specify a limit for the amount of toner used. Select Low, Medium or High.

Fifth Station

Note

The following setting item can be set with RICOH Pro C7100S/7110S/7110 only when the Special color Expansion Kit S3 option is installed. • Fifth Station

		Fifth	h Station		
Special effect toner:	Clear		\$		
Processing Target Plate:	Not Output		•		
Print priority:	Speed		•		
Fuser setting:	Normal		•		
Special effect toner		Shows the toner ty	ypes that are set for the Fifth Station.		
Processing Target Plate	9	Allows you to select a plate name to be output to the special toner. You can select a plate name from those registered to the system.			
Print priority		Allows you to pric	pritize either image quality or speed.		
		Quality	: Image quality is prioritized.		
		Speed	: Speed is prioritized.		
Fuser setting		Set the fuser. Select from [Standard] and [High quality]. This option can be specified when clear toner is set for the Fifth Station.			

Frames If the frame is drawn using solid lines

Paper frame, page frame



Imposition frame

*Page frames are drawn around each page.







If the frame is drawn using dotted lines

Note Spec

Specify the type of line (solid line or dotted line) and the length and interval for the dotted lines in the System Setup Tool.

9. Main Window

This chapter describes the settings that are displayed when you select the Progress button.

Display of the progress menu

The progress status for processing of a job is listed.

00	•			RICOH TotalFlo	ow Simply Prep	ess Client : GeneralUser	@192.168.24.251				
JobLi	st Progress	Log	System						0		
×®		₹ 🤊 🗑	0 1				E		🗾 🔜 At	l To	olbar
Proces	sing Finishe	ed 🛛									
No. 🔺	Process Job ID	Proc	ess Target	Ticket Name	Job Name	Status	Workflow	Comments	Date 🛱	1	
1 g	oj160506-00021	Section1-1	-Front(+7)	New Ticket	Job_05	Processing	🔬 👜	Factory-shipments initia	May 6, 2016 1:4		
2 p 3 p	oj160506-00022 oj160506-00023	Section1-1 Section1-1	-Front(+1) -Front(+1)	New Ticket New Ticket	Job_05 Job_05	 A Processing A Processing 		Factory-shipments initia Factory-shipments initia	. May 6, 2016 2:3. . May 6, 2016 2:4.		
										Pr lis	ocessing/Processed job t area
_										1	
* *						*			2.1.1		
lask	Event La	yout									
Process	Progress	ocess Targ	Status	Date	Finish	Date A Host	Process Comme	nt Task ID	сл	_	
in a	_	1-Front I	Processing	May 9, 2016 3:52:	18 20 Marc 1	192.168.24	.251	pj160506-0002100	009	To	sk/Event list area
		2=Eront	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40: May 6, 2016 1:40:	20 May 6, 4	016 1.4 192.168.24	251	pj160506-0002100	002		
		2-Back	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40:	30 May 6, 7	016 1:4 192.168.24	.251	pi160506-0002100	004		
		3-Front	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40:	34 May 6, 2	016 1:4 192.168.24	.251	pj160506-0002100	005		
		3-Back	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40:	38 May 6, 2	2016 1:4 192.168.24	.251	pj160506-0002100	006		
		4-Front	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40:	43 May 6, 2	016 1:4 192.168.24	.251	pj160506-0002100	007		
		4-Back	Completed	May 6, 2016 1:40:	47 May 6, 2	2016 1:4 192.168.24	.251	pj160506-0002100	008		
		1-Front	Completed	мау 6, 2016 1:40:	16 May 6, 2	192.168.24	1.251	pj160506-0002100	1001		

Toolbar

If you select the Progress button from the shortcut area, icon buttons for job operation are displayed in the toolbar.

×	Allows you to cancel the processing of the selected job.
a	Releases the pause state of the selected process job.
T	Allows you to move the selected job to the top of the list.
	Allows you to move the selected job one position up in the list.
≖	Allows you to move the selected job to the bottom of the list.
•	Allows you to move the selected job one position down in the list.
٢	Click this button after selecting a job to change the priority of the selected job.
0	Displays the online manual.
	Click this button to display the task/event list.
9	Filters the displayed list. Enter a search string in the entry field, and then click Q.
<i>6</i> %	Shows the search dialog box.

- The task/event list is displayed when you double-click the button on the processing/processed job list area.
 - The task/event list closes when you double-click the button again while the task/event list is displayed.

Processing/Processed

Note

The progress display is divided based on whether a job is being processed or has been processed. Click the Processing tab or finished tab to switch the display.

Proce	essing Finished	d							
No. 🔺	Process Job ID	Process Target	Ticket Name	Job Name	Status	Workflow	Comments	Date	Finis
1	pj160509-00004	Sec_1-1-Front(+7)	新規チケット	test_job_p	💿 🔥 Comple	🔬 iii)	Factory-shipments initia	May 9, 2016 3:5	May 9,
2	pj160509-00003	Contents_15mm_16p.pdf	新規チケット	test_job_p	🛛 🕘 🥠 Comple	- <i>5</i> 5	sample_Comment	May 9, 2016 3:5	May 9,
3	pj160509-00002	Sec_1-1-Front(+7)	新規チケット	test_job_s	💿 🔥 Comple	🛃 iiii)	Factory-shipments initia	May 9, 2016 3:5	May 9,
4	pj160509-00001	Contents_15mm_16p.pdf	新規チケット	test_job_s	💿 🧼 Comple	<i>§</i> 3	sample_Comment	May 9, 2016 3:5	May 9,
<u> </u>									4 1

Process Job ID	Shows the job ID issued by the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.
Process Target	Shows the file to be processed.
Job Name	Shows the job name.
Status	Shows the job status.
Workflow	Shows the ticket workflow. The job being processed is displayed on the blue background.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.
Date	Shows the date and time when the processing starts.
Finish Date	Shows the date and time when the processing ends. This item is displayed only when the Finished tab is selected.
Priority	Shows the job priority.
Publisher	Shows the name of the user who executed the job.
Host	Shows the name of the processing host.

Task

The Task window shows a progress status for each stage of processing.

Task Event	Layout							13 ≞		
Process Progr	ess ocess Tar Conten	g Status . 🥠 Completed	Date May 9, 2016 3:59:17	Finish Date ▲ May 9, 2016 3:5	Host 192.168.24.251	Process Comment	Task ID pj160509-0000300001	Ę.		
Process			Shows the	process ico	n.					
Progress			Shows a progress bar for each process. Processing: Indicated by a blue progress bar.							
			Error: Indicated by a red progress bar. Finished: Indicated by a gray progress bar.							
Status Shows the job status.										
Date Shows the date and time when the processing starts.										
Finish Date Shows the date and time when the processing ends.										
Host	Host Shows the name of the host used for task processing.									
Task ID Shows the task ID issued by the system.										

Event

The Event window displays various events that occurred in the selected job.

Task	Event Layout			
Level	Host	Occur Date 🔻	Message	Task ID
Þ	192.168.24.251	May 9, 2016 3:59:19 PM	🚿 [800110] Input(Advanced) Report	pj160509-0000300001

Level	Shows the importance of the event that occurred.					
	😣 : Fatal error					
	😫 : Error					
	😵 : Query					
	🔥 : Warning					
	🤣 : Information					
Host	Shows the host where the event that occurred.					
Occur Date	Shows the date and time that the event occurred.					
Message	Shows the overview and code of the event.					
Task ID	Shows the task ID issued by the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.					

Layout

The Layout window shows a progress status for each page in a process job.

Task	Event	Layout			J
Page No.	Sig.	No.	File	Progress	Ì
1	1	Ξ	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.1.pdf	🔬 📾	
2	1	F	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.2.pdf	🔬 📩	
3	2	Ħ	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.3.pdf	🔊 👘	
4	2		🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.4.pdf	🔊 👘	
5	3	Ξ	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.5.pdf	🛃 📾	
6	3		🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.6.pdf	🔬 iiii	
7	4	Ħ	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.7.pdf	🔊 👘	
8	4	L	🔁 Contents_15mm_16p.pdf.8.pdf	🔬 📩	

Page	Shows the page number.
Sig. No.	Shows the signature number and the side (front or back).
File	Shows the file name.
Progress	Shows the progress of each processing. The job being processed is displayed on the blue background.
n	Releases the pause state of the selected page/signature.

Event Detail window

When you select an event in the event list area and double-click it, the Event Detail window is displayed.

00		Event Detail
	Occur Date:	Dec 8, 2010 3:19:37 PM
	Host:	WIN-SXD6NJG1DQK
į	Code:	800110
Information	Generation source:	Job-002
	Category:	1
	ID:	pj101208-0000100001
The following	dvanced) Report logs were output.	
Detail MSC:ReportM	Report essagePPP.txt.	
		<u>+</u>
		Close

Level

Shows the importance of the event that occurred.

	😣 : Fatal error
	🔮 : Error
	😵 : Query
	🛕 : Warning
Occur Date	Shows the date and time that the event occurred.
Host	Shows the host where the event that occurred.
Code	Shows the event code.

Generation source	Shows the name of the job in which the event occurred.
Category	Shows the event category.
ID	Shows the ID of the job in which the event occurred.
Error description	Shows the source and description of the event.
Detail	Shows the details of the event.
Report	Shows a report. Detail Report Status: Finished by Error Error occurred while Optimizer [Input/Output Information] Statr: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 End: 2010/12/23 17:53:01 Input File Name: NewsBox_Vol16-8p.pdf [Results] (1) PDF Analyzer Finished
Close	Click this to close the Event Detail window.
Log

The Log menu allows you to specify search criteria to check the processing history and error processing for a particular period of time.

When you click the Log button in the main menu, the Log, Log Total, Event, and Operation Log tabs are displayed. Click on a tab to display its window. Click one of the tabs to display its window.

	Č4			*	CCONTOLATION SIL	iply riepless client. de	eneratoset@192.108.	24.231			
	JobList	Progress	Log S	() vstem						<u>u</u>	
	Log Lo	g Total Ev	rent Operation	Log							
	Date	<u></u>	-	No.	Process Job ID 🔻	Process Target	Ticket Name	Job Name	510	Process Job Report	
	💿 Past:	1 day	•							Descuse Jah Time Start	
	O Period:	May 9, 2016	5 💌 0:00	4						Process Job Time Start Process Job Time Finished	
		May 9, 2016	5 💌 0:00							Process Time Start	
			Search							Process Time Finished	
	Filter									Time of Process Job Required	Search results
с I ч ·	Status.									Time of Task Required	display area
Search criteria	Job Name:									Time of All Tasks Job Required	
setup area	Ticket Name	2:								Process Job ID Process	
	Process Targ	get:								Hotess job ib Hotess	
									-		
						-)•	<u>• • • •</u>		
				Process	Event Progress	Process Target	Status	Date	E.		
									- 1		
									- 1		
))•	L M		
l		Fiitered.0	/ Log.0								
	_									6	
	Searc	h Crite	ria Setup	area	This i	s the area v	vhere you	can set th	ne c	riteria tor a log sear	ch.
	Searc	h Resul	ts Display	/ area	Shov	vs the searc	h results.				

Log

The Log tab allows you to check the processing history for a particular period of time. Specify the criteria in the search criteria setup area and Click the Search button to display the search results in the search results display area.

00				RIC	OH TotalFlow S	Simply Prepress Client : G	eneralUser@192.168.	24.251			
Ż			8							(
JobList	Progress	Log	System								
Log Log	Total Even	nt Opera	ation Log								
Date			⁴ N	lo. Pro	cess Job ID 🔻	Process Target	Ticket Name	Job Name	5 🛱 🖁	Process Job Report	
💽 Past:	1 day 🛟										
O Period:	May 9, 2016	- 0:0	0 ‡							Process Job Time Start	
	May 0, 2016									Process Job Time Finished	
	May 9, 2016	• •	*							Process Time Start	
		Sea	arch							Process Time Finished	
Filter											
Status:	All									Time of Process Job Required	
Job Name:										Time of Task Required	
job Name.										Time of All Tasks Job Required	
Ticket Name:											
Process Targe	et:									Process Job ID Proces	s
			í.						- f		
			Ę	,) 4 F		
				Task	Event						
			Pr	rocess	Progress	Process Target 🔺	Status	Date	R.		_
									_		
											_
									- 11		
			6)			4 1		4.1
	Filtered:0 /	100.0									

Process Job ID	Shows the job ID issued by the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.
Process Target	Shows the file to be processed.
Job Name	Shows the job name.
Status	Shows the job status.
Workflow	Shows the ticket workflow.
Comments	Shows the information that is entered in Comment.
Date	Shows the date and time when the processing starts.
Finish Date	Shows the date and time when the processing ends.
Priority	Shows the job priority.
Publisher	Shows the name of the user who executed the job.
Host	Shows the name of the processing host.
Ticket Name	Shows the ticket name.

Log Total

Specify the criteria in the search criteria setup area and click the Search button to display the tabulated logs in the search results display area. The default settings appear as shown below, but you can set your own tabulation items as desired.

00				F	RICOH TotalFlow Si	mply Prepress (Client : GeneralUse	r@192.168.24.251		
JobList	Progress	Log	System	I						
Log Log	g Total Even	t Oper	ation Log							
Date				No.	Process Job ID	Job Name	Ticket Name	Process Target	Comments	Date
🕑 Past:	1 day 🛟									
O Period:	May 9, 2016	• 0:0	00 ‡							
	May 9, 2016	• 0:0	00 ¢							
			iearch							
Filter										
Job Name:										
Ticket Name	:									
Process Targ	et:									
	C	Customize	Items							
		CSVC	Dutput							
				6						
	Filtered:0 /	Log:0								4 1

Date	 Allows you to select "Past" or "Period". Past: Allows you to select the time period for the search using preset options. Period: If you specify the search period using date and time, you can select the day, month and year from the drop-down lists.
Filter	 Job Name: Allows you to enter a job name by which to filter. Ticket Name: Allows you to enter a ticket name by which to filter. Process Target: Allows you to enter the character string to be processed.
Search	Click this button to display a list of tabulated devices on the specified date.
Customize Items	Click this button to set the tabulation items in the tabulation item setting window.
CSV Output	Outputs the searched tabulated logs using a CSV file.

Event

The Event tab allows you to display logs containing only the errors that occurred during ticket processing. Specify the criteria in the search criteria setup area and click the Search button to display the search results in the search results display area. You can change the display order by clicking on the name of an item. In addition, if you double-click a selected error, you can check detailed information in the Event Details dialog box.

00				RICOH To	otalFlow Simply Prepress	Client : GeneralUse	r@192.168.24.251		
JobList	Progress		System						
	Total Event	Onera	ation Log						
Date	grotur	Open		Louol T	Occur Data	Hest	Massaga	Job Name	
Date			•	Level	May 8, 2016 2:17:2	102 168 24 251	[6100401] Printer Error	Job Name	
🕑 Past:	3 days 📮			, and a second s	May 8, 2016 2:17.5	192.168.24.251	[6100401] Printer Error		
O Pariod:	May 9, 2016	• 0.0	0	X	May 9, 2016 3:59:2	192 168 24 251	[5202129] PDF Merge Warning	test job n	ni160509-
O Period.	May 9, 2010	0.0	•	*	May 9, 2016 3:56:5	192 168 24 251	[5202129] PDF Merge Warning [5202129] PDF Merge Warning	test_job_p	pi160509-
	May 9, 2016	• 0:0	0 \$	<u></u>	May 9, 2016 3:59:1	192.168.24.251	& [800110] Input(Advanced) Report	test_job_s	pi160509-
				Ď	May 9, 2016 3:56:4	192.168.24.251	[800110] Input(Advanced) Report	test job s	pi160509-
		(5	earch)	Ď	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		pjreeses
				Ď	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				Ó	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				()	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				()	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				(j)	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				\mathcal{P}	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				Þ	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				Þ	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				Þ	May 9, 2016 1:51:1	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				Þ	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
			~	D	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				D	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				D	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				D	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				<u> </u>	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				<u> </u>	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				<u> </u>	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				<u>v</u>	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
				P	May 9, 2016 12:51:	192.168.24.251	[4000020] Delete Process Job automatically		
									-
				(
	Events 20 /	mar 2 14/-	minari) I-f-	mation (22)					24141
	Event: 26 (E	rror:2 War	ming:2 Info	rmation:22)					1

Level	Shows the importance of the event that occurred.
	😣 : Fatal error
	🤑 : Error
	🦞 : Query
	🐓 : Operation request
	🔥 : Warning
	R : Report
Message	Shows the event message.
Occur Date	Shows the date and time that the event occurred.
Job Name	Shows the job name where the event that occurred.
Host	Shows the host where the event that occurred.
ID	Shows the ID of the event.

Operation Log

	RICOH TotalFlow Simply Prepr	ess Client : GeneralUser@192.168.24	4.251	
🥝 🔚 🎝 🗶				
JobList Progress Log System				
Search Condition	Operated Date T	/pe lob/lob Template Name	User Name IP	Detai
Target: Job Template 🛟		the provide combinate comme		
Name: JobTemplate				
• Past: 1 day				
O Period: May 9, 2016 ▼ 0:00 \$				
May 9, 2016 🔹 0:00 💠				
Search				
Filter				
User Name:				
Detail:				
Filtered:0 / Log:0				

Search Condition	 Target: Allows you to select the search target from the pull-down list. Name: Allows you to select the job you want to search from the pull-down list. Past: Allows you to select the time period for the search using preset options. Period: If you specify the search period using date and time, you can select the
	day, month and year from the drop-down lists.
Filter	 User Name: Allows you to enter a user name by which to filter. Detail: Allows you to enter the detailed character string by which to filter.

System window

Select Version in the list area to display the version information for that server in the information display area.

00			RICOH T	TotalFlow Simpl	y Prepress Client : GeneralUser@192.168.24.251	
JobList	Progress	Log	System		0	
0						
License	Hort Status					
No. 4	Host Status	Category	Licence Name	Liconco	Evaluation data	
1 192.16	58.24.251	Input	CGRecipe	On	20161031	
2 192.16	58.24.251	Ext Interface	MIS JDF Link	On	20161031	
3 192.16	58.24.251	Imposition	Auto-Ganging	On	20161031	
4 192.16	58.24.251	Input	Polished Input	On	20161031	
5 192.16	58.24.251	Workflow	Activity Board	On	20161031	
6 192.16	58.24.251	Workflow	Multiple Section	On	20161031	
7 192.168	58.24.251	Page process	Auto Trap	On	20161031	
8 192.168	58.24.251	Output	OutlinePDF-Advanced	On	20161031	
						Information
						display area
						. ,
6						
-						

Licensing Information

Select License in the list area to display information about the licenses installed in TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

Licer	nse Host Statu	5			
No. 🔺	Host	Category	License Name	License	Expiration date
1	192.168.24.251	Input	CGRecipe	On	20161031
2	192.168.24.251	Ext Interface	MIS IDF Link	On	20161031
3	192.168.24.251	Imposition	Auto-Ganging	On	20161031
4	192.168.24.251	Input	Polished Input	On	20161031
5	192.168.24.251	Workflow	Activity Board	On	20161031
6	192.168.24.251	Workflow	Multiple Section	On	20161031
7	192.168.24.251	Page process	Auto Trap	On	20161031
8	192.168.24.251	Output	OutlinePDF-Advanced	On	20161031

Host Status

Click the Host Status tab to display the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Server, status of the execution server being connected, and usage condition of the disk in the information area.

12			RIC	OH TotalFlow Sim	oly Prepress Client : Ge	eneralUser@192.168	3.24.251				
4		$\langle \rangle$	5							1	
JobList	Progress	Log Sys	tem								
0	Host Status										
License	.168.24.251 (1	92,168,24,251)									
C:\		6%									
	Free Space: 1	187.58 GB/ 200.02 C	в								
D:\		1%									
	Free Space: 9	98.54 GB/ 100.0 GB									
E:\		1%									
	Free Space: 6	523.16 GB/ 630.9 GB									
Syster	n	1%									
	Free Space: 9	98.54 GB/ 100.0 GB									
Work		1%									
	Free Space: 6	523.16 GB/ 630.9 GB									
											1
				a list of th	e hosts that	comprise th	ne system	I. UIICK II	ie triana	le more	on
			the hos An ico of the i	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s	e hosts that display the ws the host s hown below	comprise th usage con tatus is disp v.	ne system dition of played o	the disk of the disk of the disk of the disk of the left	of the ho of the ho	ist. ost nam	on e. T
			the hos An icon of the i	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s	e hosts that display the ws the host s hown below	comprise th usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server	ne system dition of played o	n the left	of the ho	ost nam	e. T
			the hos An ico of the i	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s otalFlow S	e hosts that a display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepr	comprise th usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server.	ne system dition of blayed o	n the left	of the ho of the ho	st. ost nam	e. T
			the hos An icou of the i	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s otalFlow S xecution s	e hosts that a display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepr server that is	comprise th usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server. in normal	operatio	n the left	of the ho of the ho	st. ost nam	e. T
			the hose An icou of the i I : T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s otalFlow S xecution s xecution s	e hosts that a display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepr server that is	comprise th usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server. in normal nich service	ne system dition of olayed o operatio has bee	n. n the left	of the ho of the ho of the ho	st. ost nam	e. T
			the hose An icol of the i	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s otalFlow S xecution s xecution s	e hosts that of display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepr server that is server for wh server that co	comprise th usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server. in normal nich service annot be co	operatio has bee	n. n the left n. n stoppe	of the ho of the ho of the ho	d up.	e. T
Disk U	lsages		the hos An icol of the i T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T	a list of th t name to n that show cons are s otalFlow S xecution s xecution s the capac the capac disk, and disk, and	e hosts that a display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepro- server that is server that is server that co city of the loo isk drive inst the capacity work disk.	comprise the usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server. in normal nich service annot be co cal disk, sy talled on the v of the dis	operation operation has bee onnected stem disk ne TotalFl k drive a	n. n stoppe or has r (System ow Simp ssigned t	e triang of the ho of the ho d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d. d.	d up. vork disl ass is dis alFlow	e. T k (V spla Sim
Disk U	lsages		the hos An ico of the i E E E E E E E E E E E Shows capaci system display Bar	a list of th t name to o that show cons are s otalFlow S xecution s xecution s the capace ty of the d disk, and red on the	e hosts that i display the ws the host s hown below Simply Prepri- server that is server that is server that co- city of the loo isk drive inst the capacity work disk. Shows a ba is displayed When the di The bar is di more is bein or less. The bar is di more is bein or less. It is co less is beina	comprise the usage con- tatus is disp v. ess Server. in normal nich service annot be con- cal disk, sy talled on the v of the dis r chart of the isplayed in g used and used and	ne system dition of olayed o operation has bee onnected stem disk ne totalFl k drive as ne usage using a r y is norm y ellow i d the free in red if a in red if the usage	n. n stoppe or has r or has r is (System ow Simp ssigned t ratio of numerica al, the b f a disk v space c disk with e space c a disk w e ratio re	entriang of the ho of the ho of the ho d. d. tot starte), and w ly Prepre o the Tot the disk l value. ar is disp vith a tot f the disk f the disk f the d	d up. ost nam /ork disl ess is dis ealFlow capacity al capac k has de capacity sk has de capacity of a capac	k (V spla Sim y. The in bl acity ecre ity of lecro

10. MIS Link Function

This section describes the window display for JDF linking of an MIS with TotalFlow Simply Prepress.

Displaying a message list and updating a job

When a job is created using a JDF file from the MIS, you can display the Received JDF window from the JobList window.

Important

Note

Settings for MIS linking

To link the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system with an MIS using a JDF file, the registration of a URL is required (http://[IP address of TotalFlow Simply Prepress]:50067/jdf), so that the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system can receive a JDF file sent from an MIS. For more information, please contact the supplier of the MIS that you are using.

This window shows a list of messages (JMF) sent from the MIS to a job.

In addition, when a job creation command message or a job update command message is resent to a job, you can update the job based on a JDF file linked to that command.

There are two types of command messages. One allows operators to update a job and the other prompts operators to process a job after they have confirmed the detailed information of the received message.

When a message is received, the 🎬 and 🚥 icons are displayed in the Information area of the job list.

- Indicates the receipt of a message(s) that enables a job update.
- Indicates the receipt of a message(s) only for confirmation.

Operators can only confirm messages that prompt to process a job after they have confirmed the detailed information of the received messages.

Select a job in the job list and click the 🎁 icon to show the following window.

The received messages are listed in Received JMF List. Select a message in the information area to show the detailed information. When Available is displayed for Job Update, the Update button becomes active and you can update a job using a JDF file linked to that message.

00	Received	JMF		
Received JMF List			Update	
Date Time ▼ Jun 1, 2010 3:40 Jun 1, 2010 3:40 May 31, 2010 9: May 31, 2010 9:	Message Query Command Query Command	Message Type Resource SubmitQueueEntry Resource SubmitQueueEntry	Close	Currently used JDF
Information SubmitQueueEntry(Comma [Job Update] : Available [Information] Received a JMF command o this JDF, please apply "upd	nd) f creating a new job. I ateJob"	f you want to take in		

Messages to be displayed and their types

Message	Message type	Description	Job update
Command	SubmitQueueEntry	Create a job.	Available
Command	AbortQueueEntry	Forcibly delete the job.	Not Available
Command	RemoveQueueEntry	Delete the job.	Not Available
Command	HoldQueueEntry	Suspend the job.	Not Available
Command	SuspendQueueEntry	Stop the executed job.	Not Available
Command	ResumeQueueEntry	Resume the suspended or stopped job.	Not Available
Query	Status	Send the job progress.	Not Available
Query	Resource	Send the resource status.	Not Available

Status notification to the MIS

Status notifications of jobs and output plates created in TotalFlow Simply Prepress are determined depending on the JMF and JDF received from the MIS. When an instruction for status notification is issued for a job, the notification can be returned to the MIS either automatically or manually.

While the status notification is returned to the MIS automatically following the TotalFlow Simply Prepress operation, you can also issue a notification manually from the Audit Record window.

Operation 1. Display the TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client window.

- 2. Select Report from the menu in the Job Detail window.
- 3. Select the Status tab.

4. Set the job status and the resource status to be notified.

For a job status, select the target process and select the status (InProgress or Completed). For a resource status, select the check box of the resource that was output.

5. Click the Execute button for notification.

000	Report		
Notify Audit	Notify Progress		
			Execute
Job Phase	Current S	atus Maiting	Close
6 page brochure CIP4	GB PrePressPreparation [ProcessGroup]		
	GB ImpositionPreparation [ProcessGroup]		
	GB ImpositionProofing [ProcessGroup]		
	GB PlateMaking [ProcessGroup]		
		Status [InProgress 🛟	
Output Resource			
ALL	Status ResourceName	Comments	
RunList	RunList RNL000_D	Class=Parameter Status=Unavail	

Automatic accessory preset setting

When the JDF file issued by the MIS includes the imposition scheme and imposition layout, TotalFlow Simply Prepress creates the imposition scheme and imposition layout in accordance with the JDF file. However, the imposition layout described in the JDF only includes the information of sheet size and layout position of each page. The information related to the register marks and accessory of each mark is not included in the JDF. Using TotalFlow Simply Prepress, the accessory preset can be selected from the JDF imposition conditions and the accessory can be provided automatically.

The conditions in which the accessory preset is automatically selected from the JDF imposition conditions are the following combinations.

- Binding method (saddle stitching/perfect binding)
- Plate present/not present
- Device ID (type of printer) Note: This needs to match the ID managed by the MIS.
- Color used for signature (front/back)

Registering a combination of the conditions above using JDF Connect Setting Tool in advance applies the accessory preset that meets the conditions.



JDF Connect Setting Tool

This is the tool that performs the settings for the MIS linking. To use the MIS link function, make the settings using this tool first.

Starting and exiting the JDF Connect Setting Tool

Start-up

Select Maintenance Tool from the Windows Start menu. Double click JDF Connect Setting Tool from among the tool shortcuts.

Exit

Click the Close button in the bottom right of the dialog box. If you have not saved any of the changes you made, a message is displayed asking you whether to save them or not. If the message appears, follow the instructions.

Layout and basic operations in the dialog box

Job setting

Perform the basic settings from the MIS for job registration.

g JDF Connect Setting Tool						
System Setting Job Setting	*	Default Job Template: Keyword 1:	original		-	Apply
Default Imposition Setting	*	Keyword2:				
Plate/Sheet Accessory		Comments Processing of RemoveQ Auto progress notificati Total Binding: Type Sett Auto assign pages (page	ueueEntry command from MIS: on to MIS: ine: as attribute):	Information only Enable Follow the JDF Interpret as page number of PDF	Y Y Y	
Hint						Close

Note

In the main window, clicking a listed item on the left switches the parameter setting window on the right according to the clicked item.

Default Job Template	Allows you to select the job template to be used for registering a job from the MIS.
Keyword 1	Allows you to set keyword 1 to be specified when registering a job from the MIS.
Keyword 2	Allows you to set keyword 2 to be specified when registering a job from the MIS.
Comments	Allows you to set a comment to be specified when registering a job from the MIS.
Processing of RemoveQueueEntry command from MIS	Allows you to set the behavior when the MIS sends the job deletion command.
Auto progress notification to MIS	Allows you to set whether or not to send the job progress to the MIS.
Total Binding Type Setting	Allows you to set a binding type between sections when registering a job from the MIS.
Auto assign pages (pages attribute)	Allows you to set a range for automatic page assignment when registering a job from the MIS.

Accessory

Set the conditions for automatic accessory presetting.

JDF Connect Setting Tool						
System Setting Job Setting	*	Printing Style: Priority List	Single Side	•		Apply
Default Imposition Setting	*		Name	Acces	ssory Preset	Cancel
'late/Sheet		Perfect		ColorBar_1_Single	Side	
ccessory		default		StepRepeat_Singl	eSide	Add
						Edit
						Delete
		Matching Para	meters from JDF			-1
		Binding Type:	Deute et Deurs d			-
		Plate	prenect bound			
		Calara	Tes			-
		001013]			
nt						
						Close

Printing Style Allows you to select a printing style for which the condition is set.	
Priority List	Shows the condition table for assigning the accessory preset. Name: Name used to identify conditions. Accessory Preset: Name of accessory preset specified when the conditions are met.
▲	Raises the selected priority order by one level.
▼	Lowers the selected priority order by one level.
Matching Parameters from JDF	Shows the parameters specified for the conditions in the read-only display.
Add	Used to add a new condition.

Edit	Used to edit a condition.
Delete	Used to delete a condition.

Important The default conditions cannot be deleted. The conditions that have a lower priority than the default conditions are disabled.

Add/Edit

Add new rule		×
Name:	New Rule	ок
Accessory Preset:	StepRepeat_SingleSide	Canaal
Matching Paramete	ers from JDF	
Device ID:		
Binding Type:		
Plate:		
Colors:	•	

Name	Allows you to set a condition name.
Accessory Preset	Allows you to select an accessory preset to be set automatically when the conditions are met.
Device ID	Allows you to set a device ID as a condition.
Binding Type	Allows you to set a binding method as a condition.

Color management parameters

On a TotalFlow Simply Prepress Client, various settings related to job color conversion policies are handled in batch in the Input Color Setting window.

This section describes the settings in the Input Color Setting window, as well as the default settings for the ICC profiles and the recipe files for the input color space, the intermediate target color space, and the output color space.

Options for ICC color conversion

Following options are available for ICC color conversion at Input Color Settings and Output Color Settings.

ICC Conversion Option	Content
Keep pure black color	Colors with CMY=0% are converted using only K. The output K value is calculated according to printing conditions. This option is also available for grayscale and RGB data with identical RGB values.
Keep black 100% after conversion	Colors with CMY=0% and K=100% are left untouched.
Keep primary color	Primary colors (with C, M or Y only data) will not contain other colors after conversion.
Keep paper color	White values (CMYK=0, RGB=255, etc) will be output as white (CMYK=0). Without this option, some ICC profiles or selected intent may result to values other than 0%.
Keep black plate	K data is left untouched. Unlike Keep black, CMY values will not affect the output. This option will ignore maximum ink amount.

Input color space

This section describes the default ICC profiles that can be selected in the Input color space pulldown list. The default ICC profiles that can be selected differ depending on whether you are working with the RGB, CMYK, or Gray input color space.

Profiles for the RGB input color space

The default ICC profiles for RGB that can be selected in the Input color space pulldown list are shown below. Profiles for the RGB input color space

Profiles for the RGB input color space

RGB	SRGB IEC61966 🛟	ICC Conversion Setting	
	🗹 Use Embeted profile	Perceptual	
	sRGB IEC61966 🛟	ICC Conversion	
	☑ Use Embeted profile	Perceptual	

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
DS sRGB for WinCRT.icm	DS sRGB for WinCRT g=2.2 65K	For standard Windows monitors
DS std_RGB for MacCRT.icm	DS std_RGB for MacCRT g=1.8 65K	For standard Macintosh monitors
sRGB Color Space Profile.icm	sRGB IEC61966-2.1	sRGB Profile

Profiles for the CMYK input color space

The default ICC profiles for CMYK that can be selected in the Input color space pulldown list are shown below.

Profiles for the CMYK input color space

СМУК	DS_JapanColor2	ICC Conversion Setting
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual
	DS_JapanColor2 🛟	ICC Conversion
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
AdobeCMYK.icm	Adobe CMYK	CMYK profile from Adobe
DS_JapanColor2001 type1 V1.icc ^{*1}	DS_JapanColor2001 type1-Art V1	Profile created from the measured color values for Type 1 paper (art paper) included in the Japan Color 2001 Reference Kit. (Output conditions: Round dots, 175 lpi, Screen angles: C=112.5°, M=52.5°, Y=97.5°, K=-7.5°)
DS_JapanColor2001type1 V2.icc	DS_JapanColor2001 type1-Art V2	Profile with the same conditions as V1. Using the black point correction, shadow areas are expressed darker than VI.
DS_JapanColor2001 type2 V1.icc ^{*1}	DS_JapanColor2001 type2-MatCoated V1	Profile created from the measured color values for Type 2 paper (matte coated paper) included in the Japan Color 2001 Reference Kit. (Output conditions: Round dots, 175 lpi, Screen angles: C=112.5°, M=52.5°, Y=97.5°, K=-7.5°)
DS_JapanColor2001type2 V2.icc	DS_JapanColor2001 type2-MatCoated V2	Profile with the same conditions as V1. Using the black point correction, shadow areas are expressed darker than VI.
DS_JapanColor2001 type3 V1.icc ^{*1}	DS_JapanColor2001 type3-Coated V1	Profile created from the measured color values for Type 3 paper (coated paper) included in the Japan Color 2001 Reference Kit. (Output conditions: Round dots, 175 lpi, Screen angles: C=112.5°, M=52.5°, Y=97.5°, K=-7.5°)
DS_JapanColor2001type3 V2.icc	DS_JapanColor2001 type3-Coated V2	Profile with the same conditions as V1. Using the black point correction, shadow areas are expressed darker than VI.

DS_JapanColor2001 type4 V1.icc ^{*1}	DS_JapanColor2001 type4-Uncoated V1	Profile created from the measured color values for Type 4 paper (high quality paper) included in the Japan Color 2001 Reference Kit. (Output conditions: Round dots, 175 lpi, Screen angles: C=112.5°, M=52.5°, Y=97.5°, K=-7.5°)
DS_JapanColor2001type4 V2.icc	DS_JapanColor2001 type4-Uncoated V2	Profile with the same conditions as V1. Using the black point correction, shadow areas are expressed darker than VI.
DS_JMPA Color V1.icc *2	DS_JMPA Color V1	Profile compliant with JMPA Color, which was established as the color reproduction reference for magazine advertising production by the JMPA (Japan Magazine Publishers Association). (Output conditions: DDCP output)
DS_JAPANnew HiMK 175SQ.icm	DS_JAPANnew HiMK 175 SQ	Hi-Mckinley paper (quality coated paper from Gojo Paper) using TOKA inks and square dots at 175 lpi
DS_SWOP2 Std 175SQR.icm	DS_SWOP2 Std 175 SQR	Art paper using SWOP compliant inks and square dots at 175 lpi
DS_EURO2 Std 175SQR.icm	DS_EURO2 Std 175 SQR	Art paper using EUROscale compliant inks and square dots at 175 lpi

*1 Profile distributed by the JSPST (The Japan Society for Printing Science and Technology) that was created from digitally measured color values included in the Japan Color 2001 Reference Kit for offset sheetfed printing.

*2 Profile that is compliant with the JMPA color standard that was established as a color reproduction reference for magazine advertising production by the JMPA. It was created from the independently measured color values in the DDCP output color chart included with the JMPA vendor kit.

Profiles for the Gray input color space

The default ICC profiles for Gray that can be selected in the Input color space pulldown list are shown below.

Profiles for the Gray input color space

Gray	K-DS_JapanCol 🛟	ICC Conversion	
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual	
	T K-DS_JapanCol	ICC Conversion	
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual	

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
AdobeGray20.icm	Adobe Gray . 20% Dot Gain	Gray profile from Adobe
DS std_gray for CMYK.icm	DS std_gray for CMYK	For CMYK images
DS std_gray for RGB.icm	DS std_gray for RGB	For RGB images
DS_KlinearGray for Adobe CMYK.icm	DS K-linear Gray for Adobe CMYK	For CMYK images. When you set AdobeCMYK.icm as the profile selection for preconversion, you can save the linearity of the K separation during conversion. Note that you cannot save the linearity of the K separation when you combine this with any other profile except the AdobeCMYK.icm profile.
DS_Gray_gamma_1_8.icc	Gray Gamma=1.8	Gamma 1.8 profile
DS_Gray_gamma_2_2.icc	Gray Gamma=2.2	Gamma 2.2 profile

Recipe Conversion

Note

When using a Colorgenius DC recipe file to convert an RGB image to a CMYK image, recipe conversion options are used. When a recipe file is set, quality is optimized for the images allocated to the PDF file.

 Recipe conversion optimize RGB images within PDF files and convert them to CMYK. It is also possible to return CMYK images that were created using low quality RGB to CMYK conversion to RGB data and convert them to CMYK appropriate for the printing conditions. Since the quality of these CMYK images may vary, we recommend using Colorgenius LE to check the images as you work if you run recipe conversion on these types of CMYK images.

- For normal PDF (PDF that was not optimized in Colorgenius LE), use the same recipe file for all of the RGB and CMYK images within the PDF files for CMYK conversion. If you link to Colorgenius LE, you can set recipe files (assign recipes) for the individual images as you view them in Simple Preview to convert them to CMYK that uses recipes that are appropriate for the images. See "Linking with Colorgenius LE" below for more information.
- The recipe files that can be used in both input color setting in TotalFlow Simply Prepress and Colorgenius LE are limited to those created in Colorgenius DC2 and later.
- The each elements in PDF are performed color conversion as follows according to the each settings.
 - If you use PDF optimized in Colorgenius LE

Images to which a recipe is assigned:

Color conversion is executed using the recipe specified in Colorgenius.

Images to which no recipe is assigned:

Color conversion is executed as follows depending on the selected option for the conversion method of the input color space: color conversion is passed (colors are identified as the same color) when the Recipe/Pass option is selected, the ICC conversion is executed when the Recipe/ICC Conversion option is selected, and the input color space is converted to the output color space using the device link profile when the Recipe/Device Link option is selected.



 If you use PDF not optimized in Colorgenius LE Image: Default recipe processing

- Images to be processed using recipe conversion are once converted to an internal RGB color space before the processing. The conversion to the internal RGB color space is executed using an ICC profile and input colors are converted using profiles as follows.
 - For PDFs optimized in Colorgenius LE ICC profiles are always embedded in images to which recipes were assigned using Colorgenius LE, so those profiles are used
 - For normal PDF (PDF not optimized in Colorgenius LE)
 When an ICC profile is embedded in the image: The embedded ICC profile is used.
 When an ICC profile is embedded in the image: The profile specified in the input color settings is used.

Important

- Applying default recipe files to PDF data including images with embedded recipes if there is even one image with a recipe embedded, the default recipe file is not used)
 - For PDF files with which a recipe has been assigned using Colorgenius LE, the Default Recipe File is ignored, and the information assigned with Colorgenius LE and the settings in the Environment Setup window are used.
 - For example, when a large size image such as 2,300 mm x 1,500 mm that is excessively larger than the paper size is included, if the temporary file size exceeds 2 GB during the recipe conversion processing, the "An internal error has occurred!" error is issued. In this case, edit the PDF to crop the image according to the paper size.
 - If the number of pixels in the vertical or horizontal direction of the image included in the PDF is either 15 pixels or less or 30,000 pixels or more, the recipe conversion is not executed.
 - Note: For the points to note other than those described above, refer to the reference manual and the manual for points to note of Colorgenius LE/AC.

Relationship between the Colorgenius peripheral devices and recipe files

This product supports Colorgenius LE of SCREEN Graphic and Precision Solutions Co., Ltd.

Colorgenius LE can be downloaded for free from SCREEN MT Store. http://www.screen-mt.com/newmt/support/index.html

• Linking with Colorgenius LE

Colorgenius LE is a special plug-in for Adobe Acrobat. You must have recipe files created in Colorgenius DC to use it. Colorgenius LE allows you to assign appropriate recipe files to RGB digital camera images included in PDF files and generate PDF files with embedded recipe files. PDF files with embedded recipes generated in Colorgenius LE are loaded into PolishedInput, the optimal conversion (RGB to CMYK or CMYK to CMYK) based on the recipe files assigned to each image is run, and the PDF file for printing is created.

- Colorgenius DC Colorgenius DC is CMYK image creation software that performs color correction and density correction on RGB images created using a digital camera or poor quality CMYK images converted using simple conversion from RGB to generate optimal image data for printing.
- Recipe File

A recipe file is a file created in Colorgenius DC. It includes keywords for subjects and finishing specifications as well as quality definition data and is used for RGB to CMYK conversion or CMYK to CMYK conversion.



Default recipe files

This section describes the default recipe files that can be selected in the Default Recipe File pulldown list.

600	Select Image Conversion Recipe
Recipe settings for	RGB image to RGB conversion
Modif	ipe File: V4SC01Standard v4SC01Standard y the ima V4SC02Portrait y Level: V4SC03Machine V4SC03Machine v4SC03Machine v4SC05Scenery wrect the V4SC06White Chinaware y when enlarging the image
Outpu	V4SC04Food A t Resolut V4SC07Jewel V
Default Recip	e File will not be applied if there is one recipe assigned image or more.
	Cancel OK
The default recipe V4 □000ΔΔ.cnt □ Recipe file nam There are four types V4PC 00ΔΔ.cnt This is an RGB-€MY V4SC 00ΔΔ.cnt This is a CMYK-€M V4SR 00ΔΔ.cnt This is a CMYK-€M V4SR 00ΔΔ.cnt This is a CMYK-RGE 00 Recipe number, Assigns unique numb	file configuration is shown below. e of conversion recipes. K recipe for conversion to CMYK. recipe for multicolor conversion. YK recipe for CMYK readjustment and conversion to CMYK. e recipe for CMYK readjustment and multicolor conversion. differentiates recipes for AI bypass ers as recipe numbers such as 01, 02.
In addition, it adds "	o" before the number, as in p01 and p02 to differentiate recipes for AI bypass.
ممم Recipe data Recipes for individ	ual purposes come as defaults with the software. For more information, see below.
Standard	Sets standard values for the highlight and shadow points and corrects any color cast that may be present in the image. This is a setup that does not significantly change the tone or brightness of the original.
Portrait	This is a setup for portraits that corrects for slight color casts, makes the midtones somewhor brighter, reduces the black separation and sharpness in the skin tones, and softens the overall image more than the Standard setup.

so that jaggy edges are not obvious.

greens and makes food products look fresh.

This is a setup that significantly increases the sharpness and makes borders better defined

This is a setup that in addition to the Standard setup, removes muddiness from the reds and

Many scenery photos have color casts, and this setup significantly reduces them. It also

uses color correction functions to enhance colors in the sky and in greenery.

Machine

Food

Scenery

White Chinaware	This is a setup that adjusts the highlight point setup so that the white in the china appears whiter and increases the sharpness so that the surfaces appear smooth.
Jewel	This is a setup that in addition to the Standard setup, uses sharpness correction to give jewelry a three-dimensional feel and enhances the shininess of the highlights.
NightScene	This is a setup that reduces highlight and shadow point correction, maintains the feeling of the original, and slightly brightens highlight areas, such as lights, while preserving the darkness of the image.
Standard	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Standard setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
Standard Keep Light	This is a setup that adjusts the highlight and shadow points, minimizes the correction of color casts, maintains the feeling of the original, preserves the general tonality of the original, and somewhat brightens the image.
Standard Keep	This is a setup that adjusts the highlight and shadow points, minimizes the correction of color casts, maintains the feeling of the original, and preserves the general tonality and brightness of the original.
Standard Light	Sets the highlight and shadow points to standard values, and corrects any color cast present in the image. This setup preserves the general tonality of the original and somewhat brightens the image.
Portrait Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Portrait setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
Light Portrait	This is a setup that changes the tone correction in the Portrait setup, producing bright, clean skin tones.
Dark Portrait	This is a setup that brightens the midtones more than the Portrait setup, producing clean skin tones.
Machine Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Machines setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
Food Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Food setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
Scenery Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Scenery setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
White China Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the White Chinaware setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
Jewel Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Jewels setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.
NightScene Sharp	This is a setup that increases the sharpness more than the Night Scene setup. This is suitable for processing RGB images with no sharpening.

Image conversion settings

This section describes the option settings in the Select Image Conversion Recipe window.

\varTheta 🔿 🕤 S	elect Image Conversion Recipe
Recipe settings for RGB image	to RCB conversion
🗯 💵 Default Recipe File: 🚺	4SC01Standard
Modify the image Quality Level: Correct the Sha Output Resolution	esolution according to the output resolution Standard • arpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image 360 dpi
Ψ ¹	Cancel OK
Modify the image resolution according to the output resolution	Setting that optimizes the quality of image files laid out in PDF files. Select this check box when importing PDF files to run image conversion according to the settings in Quality Level, Correct the Sharpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image, and Output Resolution.
Quality Level	 Standard: Effective for images enlarged up to about 300%. Uses Bicubic interpolation, which is generally considered good quality. The quality when enlarging images is better than Bilinear or Nearest Neighbor. In addition, sharpening appropriate for the amount of enlargement is applied after enlargement. High: Effective for images enlarged to about 330% or more. It applies Dainippon Screen's unique algorithms (sharpness interpolation), which makes it possible to

	maintain quality levels even for areas enlarged 330% or more.
Correct the Sharpness parameter automatically when enlarging the image	Select this check box to automatically apply the optimal sharpness correction to images laid out in sizes that exceed their original resolution using TotalFlow Simply Prepress.
Output Resolution	Sets the resolution for the image after the RGB to CMYK conversion or CMYK to CMYK conversion.

Important

• For PDF files with which a recipe has been assigned using Colorgenius LE, Modify the image resolution according to the output resolution settings is ignored, and the information assigned with Colorgenius LE and the settings in the Environment Setup window are used.

Select this check

Note

• Enlargement Ratio

The enlargement/reduction percentage is shown as a ratio of the input PDF image resolution to the Output Resolution set here. (Example: If the PDF image resolution is 100 dpi and the output resolution is set to 350 dpi, the ratio is a 350% enlargement, so Quality Level(High) should be selected.) This ratio may not match the enlargement/reduction ratio shown in the TotalFlow Simply Prepress. This value is the resolution of the image embedded in the PDF file.

Device link profiles

This section describes default device link profiles that can be selected when running device link conversion. The default device link profiles that can be selected differ depending on whether you are converting RGB, CMYK or Gray, and whether you are using color conversion settings during output.

Device link profiles for RGB

This section describes the default device link profiles that can be selected using the Device Link profile pulldown list for RGB.



The default device link profiles that you can select below.

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
linkRGB2CMYK.icc	ps RGB2CMYK	Device link profile for testing the following conversions without generating a black separation. C:=1.0-R/ M:=1.0-G Y:=1.0-B K:=0.0
linkRGB2CMYK_il18.icc	Illust Mac g= 1.8RGB2CMYK	Sets the maximum UCR assuming Macintosh monitor RGB (for illustration data). If the UCR is set to the maximum value and the amount of gray is the same as the amount of RGB, the data is output using only the K separation.
linkRGB2CMYK_il22.icc	Illust Win g= 2.2 RGB2CMYK	Sets the maximum UCR assuming Windows monitor RGB (for illustration data). If the UCR is set to the maximum value and the amount of gray is the same as the amount of RGB, the data is output using only the K separation.
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR1_Max.icm		Test device link profile for replacement of the K separation using the selected percentage. 1: Maximum(100%)
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR2_Heavy.icm		2:Heavy(40%)
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR3_Medium.icm	BG/UCR(1 to 6)	3:Medium(34%)
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR4_Light.icm		4:Light(23%)
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR5_Light2.icm		5:Light2(22%)
linkRGB2CMYK_UCR6_Zero.icm		6:Zero(0%)

Device link profiles for CMYK

This section describes the default device link profiles that can be selected using the Device Link profile pulldown list for CMYK.

СМУК	DS_JapanColor2	Device Link Conversion	Setting	
Chint	Use Embeted profile	TP-J-SX-001:TestLinkCMYK TP-J520-ZZ-DED:TestLinkC TP-I520-ZZ-SED:TestLinkC	(2CMYK:50%(Direct) CMYK2CMYK:50%(Direct) MYK2CMYK:50%(Direct)	
	T DS_JapanColor2	TP-J520-ZZ-SES:TestLinkCM	MYK2CMYK:50%(Direct)	
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual		

The default device link profiles that you can select below.

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
linkGRAY2CMYK.icc	Linear CMYK2CMYK	Test device link profile for generating a black separation and converting the CMY values to 0.

Device link profiles for Gray

This section describes the default device link profiles that can be selected using the Device Link profile pulldown list for Gray.

Gray	K-DS_JapanCol	Device Link Conversion	
	Use Embeted profile	TP-J520-ZZ-DED:k-only GRAY2CMYK(Direct)	
	T K-DS_JapanCol	TP-J520-ZZ-SES:k-only GRAY2CMYK(Direct)	
	Use Embeted profile	Perceptual	

The default device link profiles that you can select differ depending on whether you are using offset simulation mode or wide gamut mode.

The default device link profiles that you can select during wide gamut mode are shown below.

File Name	GUI Display (internal name)	Contents
linkGRAY2CMYK.icc	k-only GRAY2CMYK	Test device link profile for generating a black separation and converting the CMY values to 0.

How to register profiles and recipes

This section describes how to register new ICC profiles, device link profiles and recipe files to the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system.

Operation

1. Start the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system service manager, and stop the system.

2. The location where the data is copied differs depending on the type of ICC profile, device link profile or recipe file. Copy files to the appropriate folder according to the following chart.

Туре	Save Location	Contents
ICC profile	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ icc	Save ICC profiles to be used with the input and intermediate targets here.
Device link Device link (offset simulation)	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ dlcolor\offsetoutput_target	Save device link profiles here. It becomes possible to select this when you specify Device Link in the input color window.
Recipe conversion (offset simulation RGB images)	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ recipe\offsetoutput_forRGBimage	Save recipes file for RGB image processing in offset simulation mode here. The recipes become recipe files for RGBgCMYK conversion.
Recipe conversion (offset simulation CMYK images)	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ recipe\offsetoutput_forCMYKimage	Save recipes file for CMYK image processing in offset simulation mode here. The recipes become recipe files for CMYKgCMYK conversion.
Recipe conversion (wide gamut RGB images)	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ recipe\directoutput_forRGBimage	Save recipe files for RGB image processing in wide gamut mode here. The recipes become recipe files for RGBgRGB conversion.
Recipe conversion (wide gamut CMYK images)	TFSVR\proc\data\preference\color\ recipe\directoutput_forCMYKimage	Save recipe files for CMYK image processing in wide gamut mode here. The recipes become recipe files for CMYKgRGB conversion.

For the intermediate color profile setting, the conversion of the target profile is specified as the offset simulation mode, and the no-conversion is the wide gamut mode.
 Note: The wide gamut mode cannot be used when you print data to offset printing presses and monochrome inkjet printers.

3. Start the TotalFlow Simply Prepress system service manager, and restart the system.



